CONTENTS

苍 頭目	Tretace	
	JATCO Technical Review第4号に寄せて	小島 久義1
	Toward Publication of JATCO Technical Review No. 4	Hisayoshi KOJIMA
实 斩	i / Contribution	
寄和	高 / Contribution	D (D D tyrr ut
	Development of Mobility, Vehicle and Transmission Technology	Prof. Dr. Ing. Ferit Küçükay 3
特集	1/新型ベルトCVT紹介/Special Feature 1: Focus	on New Steel-belt CVTs
	1. 150NmFF車用スチールベルト式新型CVTの開発	山下 裕7
	Development of a New Steel-belt CVT for 150-Nm Front-drive Cars	Yutaka YAMASHITA
	2. FF車用高トルク容量新世代ベルトCVTの開発	
	Development of New-Generation Belt CVTs with High Torque Capac	ity for Front-Drive Cars
	菅野 一彦 安保 佳寿 平林 雄二 渡部 省	i司 柴山 尚士17
	Kazuhiko SUGANO Keiju ABO Yuji HIRABAYASHI Shouji WATA	NABE Takashi SHIBAYAMA
特集	2 / ダイヤモンドマチックの技術 /	
	Special Feature 2: Diamondmatic's Trans	mission Technologies
	1. ダイヤモンドマチックの技術	安盛 善31
	Diamondmatic's Technologies	Yoshi YASUMORI
	2. ダイヤモンドマチック(DMC)のAT , CVT 開発の歴史	
	History of the Development of Diamondmatic (DMC) ATs and CVTs	
	平松 健男 森田 敏彦 大西	घ 豊二 三浦 美利·······34
	Takeo HIRAMATSU Toshihiko MORITA Toyoji	OHNISHI Mitoshi MIURA
	3. クラッチtoクラッチ変速制御	
	Clutch-to-Clutch Shift Control	
	臼杵 克俊 矢野 裕三 濱野 〕	正宏 古市 曜一······50
	Katsutoshi USUKI Yuzo YANO Masahiro HA	AMANO Yoichi FURUICHI
	4. ATの最適変速段制御とCVTの最適変速比制御	
	Optimum AT Shift Pattern Control and Optimum CVT Ratio Pattern (Control
	~	·村 中 五家 仁······55
	Ataru 1	TANIMURA Hitoshi GOKA
	5. 1050 高温浸炭の実用化	藤原 克哉62
	Practical Application of 1050 High-temperature Carburizing	Katsuya FUJIWARA
=^ -	671-14 / 7F 1 4 1 F	
	·解説 / Technical Papers	
	1. ATCUソフトウェア検証用HILSの開発と応用	
	The Development and Application of HILS for ATCU Software Verif	
	市川修二 佐藤 雅行 中岩 宏和 勝	
	Shuji ICHIKAWA Masayuki SATO Hirokazu NAKAIWA Fuyuku	
	守田・暁	
	Toshinori MOF	RITA Toshio MATSUMURA

2	. ABAQUSを用いた変速用湿式多板クラッチの面圧分布。	と温度分布の予測		
	Prediction of Contact Pressure Distribution and Temperature Distribution	on of a Wet Multi-disc	Clutch Using A	ABAQUS
			矢部	康志76
			Yasushi	YABE
3	. 浸炭歯車のピッチング強度に及ぼす潤滑油の影響		陳	勇83
	The Influence of ATF on the Pitting Fatigue Strength of Carb	ourized Gears	Yong	CHEN
4	. トロイダルCVT変速性能の特徴と技術課題への対応			
	Features of Toroidal CVT Shift Performance and Measures for	or Resolving Techr	nical Issues	
	西原 康幸 岡崎 誠 堀尾 真隆	手塚 晃典	根本	勉92
	Yasuyuki NISHIHARA Makoto OKAZAKI Masaoki HORIO			
5	. ギヤ音低減の取り組み	仁藤 政孝		修99
	Gear Noise Reduction Techniques	Masataka NITOU	Osamu YO	SHIDA
6	. JEPS活動 箱物加工ライン「0.1分/工程 」の紹介			
	Introducing the Transmission Case & Torque Converter Housing N	Machining Lines with		•
				治105
			Kenji MATSI	JMOTO
7	. 塑性加工技術によるネットシェイプ化取り組み事例			
	Examples of Netshaping Using Plastic Working Technique			_,
		山内 吉美		草矢 ·············11′
	Yosh	nimi YAMAUCHI	Takuya YAM	IAZAKI
	/			
品フ	インナップ / Product Line-up			114
* -	初入 / Introduction of Norw Decidents			
	紹介 / Introduction of New Products		ク加	 440
1	. Ford向けFF車用5速AT JF506E-V (FPH) の紹介			正一 118
0	Introducing the JF506E-V (FPH) 5-speed AT for Ford Applic	cation		TAGA
2	. FF車用4速AT JF405E-G (FRB) の紹介	Coro		章······123
	Introducing the JF405E-G (FRB) 4-speed AT for Front-drive	Cars	Akira YAM	AZAKI
旦 幻	介 / Introduction of Products			
) / The folder of Trodices . FF車用4速AT JF404E-W (FDO) の紹介			120
ı	Introducing the JF404E-W (FDO) 4-speed AT for Front-driv			123
2	. FF車用4速AT JF405E-H (FRO) の紹介			134
2	Introducing the JF405E-H (FRO)4-speed AT for Front-drive			10
3	. FF車用4速AT JF405E-Q (FRA) の紹介			133
3	Introducing the JF405E-Q (FRA)4-speed AT for Front-drive			130
1	. FF車用5速AT JF506E-R (FPO) の紹介····································			121
4	Introducing the JF506E-R (FPO)5-speed AT for Front-drive			130
E	. FF車用5速AT JF506E-L (FPD) の紹介			127
3	Introducing the JF506E-L (FPD) 5-speed AT for Front-drive			137
e	. 横置きFFベース4WD車用5速AT W5A51 (BKO) の紹介:			120
Ö	` ,			138
7	Introducing the Transverse W5A51 (BKO) 5-speed AT for F . FR車用 油圧制御式4速 AT JR402H-T (RKB) の紹介			4.44
,	. FR早円 油圧制御式4速 AT JR402H-T (RKB) の紹介 Introducing the JR402H-T (RKB) Hydraulically Controlled 4			14
	- margadana me ar4020- i trrpi ovaladicany controllea 4		u-curve Cars	
O	, , , ,	•		
8	. FR車用4速AT JR405E-K(RZB)の紹介 Introducing the JR405E-K (RZB) 4-speed AT for Rear-drive			143

9. FR車用4速AT JR402E-M(RJD)の紹介	145
Introducing the JR402E-M (RJD) 4-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars 10.FR車用 5速AT JR507E (RXO) の紹介	147
Introducing the JR507E (RXO) 5-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars 11. FF車用ベルトCVT F1C1(BAO)の紹介	149
Introducing the Steel-belt F1C1 CVT (BAO) for Front-drive Cars 12. 縦置き4WD車,FF車用4速AT(RAM)の紹介	
Introducing the Longitudinal 4-speed AT (RAM) for 4WD Cars and Front-dr	ive Cars
TOPICS	
富士AT株式会社の紹介	柳澤 孝153
Introducing Fuji AT Ltd Ta	akashi YANAGISAWA
事業所紹介 / Introduction of Business Operation Offices	
1. JATCO京都地区(旧ダイヤモンドマチック)の紹介	辻本 和正156
Introducing JATCO's Kyoto Operations (Formerly Diamondmatic Co., Ltd.)	Kazumasa TSUJIMOTO
2. ジヤトコ・コリア(JKE)の紹介	田代 綾夫159
Introducing JATCO Korea Engineering Corporation	Ayao TASHIRO
特許紹介 / Patents	162
社外技術発表一覧 / List of Released Reports for Public	165

巻頭言 Preface



JATCO Technical Review 第4号に寄せて

Toward Publication of JATCO Technical Review No. 4

取締役社長 President & CEO 小島久義 Hisayoshi KOJIMA

トランステクノロジー社と旧ジャトコの合併から3年半が経過した2003年4月にダイヤモンドマチック社との合併によって新たなジヤトコが生まれます。この時期にジヤトコテクニカルレビュー第4号が発刊されるのはたいへん意義深いと感じています。

第一号の佐々木前会長の巻頭言にもあるように、 当社の商品であるAT・CVTは複雑な構造、精度の 高い部品構成、そして高度の制御技術とたいへん 高い技術レベルが要求される製品です。技術はジ ヤトコにとって会社の基盤となるものです。言い 換えれば、当社は技術で生きて行く会社であると 思います。

技術(engineering)と科学(science)についてお話したいと思います。技術とは人間が少しでも楽をするために生み出したものです。技術の成果は5%の発想と95%の汗の賜物と言われています。これからも、使う人を考えない技術はないと思いますし、CSを考えることの大切さにもつながると思います。一方、科学は技術を体系化したものです。科学の裏付けが技術の発展のためには重要であることは言うまでもありません。本誌はこの両面をカバーするものと考えています。

本書のような多くの読者を対象とする技術書に必要なことは難しい内容をわかりやすく記述することだと思います。真の権威者(authority)は素人にも理解できるようなわかりやすい説明ができる人

Three and half years have gone since the merger of old Jatco with Trans Technology. Now, new Jatco is born by the merger with Diamondmatic. I think it is very important to have a fourth issue of 'JATCO Technical Review' at this important timing, April 2003.

As Mr. Sasaki, former Chairman mentioned in the first issue of 'JATCO Technical Review', AT and CVT require high engineering level, such as complicated structures, highly accurate parts structures, and sophisticated control technologies. Engineering is really the basis of JATCO. In other words, JATCO lives on engineering.

I want to touch upon 'engineering 'and' science'. Human created engineering to seek as much comfort. They say the outcome of engineering is based 5% of inspiration and 95% of sweat. This means there is nothing engineering which does not care about the users. This also leads to the importance of customer satisfaction. On the other hand, if we systemize engineering, it becomes science. It is needless to say that the scientific backbone is important for the progress of engineering. I believe 'JATCO Technical Review' covers both engineering and science.

To explain a complicated matter simple is essential for a book like 'JATCO Technical Review 'which is widely read. True authorities should be the people who can describe a matter in an easy style so that everybody

だと思います。これは技術の世界に限ったことではありません。皆さんはそれぞれが自己の持つ専門領域を背景にして社会に貢献しています。技術に限らず、皆さんは自己の専門知識、経験に誇りを持って活動していただきたいと思います。しかしながら、いくら専門性があってもそれが相手に納得されるものでなければ専門性の意味は極端に薄れます。どうか、わかりやすい説明を心がけていただきたいと思います。

技術の発展には歴史(history)が大切であると言われています。即ち、技術は積上げが重要であるということであろうと思います。言い換えれば、先ほど述べた95%の汗の記録をしっかりと残すことが重要です。言うまでもありませんが、これは技術の世界だけではなく、専門性の存在するところはどこにもあてはまります。技術の世界では、図面、技術標準、特許、そして本書のような技術誌に記録を残すことが大切です。

本号には最近のジヤトコの技術上ひいては経営上の大きなテーマであるCVTの特集とダイヤモンドマチックの技術の紹介があります。大いに期待して熟読していただきたいと思います。当社の多くの商品の中でも核となるCVT技術の一層のレベルアップを期待します。また、ダイヤモンドマチックで培われてきた技術とジヤトコの技術との融合による相乗効果も大いに期待しています。当社の技術が自動車業界において常にトップの位置を維持する一助に本誌が寄与することを切望してやみません。

can understand. This is not limited to the world of engineering. Everybody contributes to the society by having a firm backbone of specialty. I would like you to be proud of your specialties and experiences. However, specialty has less meaning if you cannot convince others with your specialty. Please bear in mind that you should explain in a simple manner.

They say 'history' is important for the progress of engineering. I think this means to make a pile of engineering is important. In other words, to have a firm record of 95% of sweat which I touched before is important. It is needless to say this will apply to any other areas than engineering where the specialty exists. In engineering world, it is important to maintain the drawings, engineering standards, patents, and books like this.

We have special editions of CVT which is one of our biggest engineering and management issue, and the introduction of Diamondmatic engineering. Please be looking forward to read them, and read them carefully. I hope our CVT engineering will further improve. I also hope synergy created by the amalgamation of Diamondmatic's engineering and Jatco's engineering. I long for Jatco's engineering continuously occupies the best position in the automotive industry.

Development of Mobility, Vehicle and Transmission Technology

Prof. Dr.-Ing. Ferit Küçükay Director of the Institute of Automotive Engineering Technical University of Braunschweig Germany



Everything changes: the only thing that remains constant is change itself, which is particularly true for automotive technology.

Ever since the wheel was invented about four to five thousand years ago, its complexity has increased enormously, as shown in figure 1. It is interesting to take a closer look at the intervals between forward leaps in the innovative standards of wheel technology. A few examples shall suffice here to demonstrate these developments: from the first wheel roughly 7000 years ago, to the Roman chariot about 2000 years ago, finally, a self-propelled vehicle, which uses a steam engine and was invented by a French engineer in the year 1769.

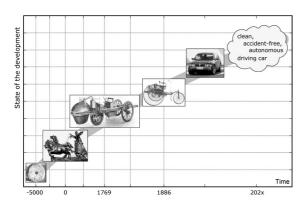


Figure 1: History of automobile development

The year 1886 marked the birth of the automobile, when Carl Benz developed the motor coach. That year can be regarded as the actual starting point in automobile history. We are now in the year 2003 AD, in which our example of the current state-of-the-art technology is the BMW 7-series. It is evident from the graph in the figure that the rate of development has increased continuously, and the last 100 years in particular have seen an enormous rise.

If one is to extrapolate the observed rate of development into the future, one can predict that automobiles will operate - at least in certain regions - without pollution, accident free and completely autonomous. What actually are the reasons that made us, and still make us, develop better and better automobiles? The answer lies in the growing need for mobility, or, in other words, the growth in mobility, which is shown in figure 2.

If we take a look at the different means of transport, we have in earlier times primarily water ways and horses. The summation curve is shown in black. 200 years ago we find that the total distance that a human being traveled was a mere 30 meters per day.

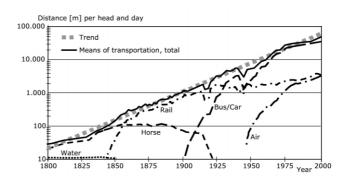


Figure 2: Growth rates of human mobility

Around 1850, people started to use rail transport as well, which raised the mobility radius per person to about 1000 metres per day. This was further increased with the advent of buses and cars. Finally, the available means of transportation also included aircraft. The summation curve clearly reflects downward trends during the world wars. In this semi-logarithmic graph, the summation curve can also be interpolated by a straight line. If we now compare the point in the year 2000 with that of the year 1800, with respect to the

mobility per day per person, we find that the rate of increase corresponds to a factor of more than 1000, and there is no indication that this line might cave in. On the contrary: to maintain and raise the level of prosperity we have reached, mobility has to continue to grow. This is demonstrated by figure 3.

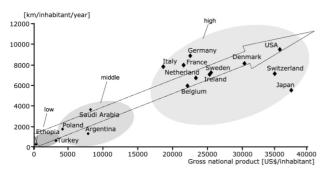


Figure 3: Mobility and prosperity

The y-axis shows the rate of mobility, displayed as "distance covered per inhabitant per year". The gross national product of each respective country is plotted on the x-axis, and is expressed in US Dollars per inhabitant. For increased clarity, countries are ordered into three groups, based on their varying Gross National Products (GNP): "high", "middle" and "low". Comparing the GNP to its respective mobility rate yields an interesting result. What becomes evident now is a clear relationship between rate of mobility and gross national product. This obvious relationship allows us to draw the following conclusion: mobility is one of the basic needs of human beings, just like the air we need to breathe. But mobility is also one of the basic requirements for prosperity (expressed in GNP).

It can therefore be summarized that mobility is a basic prerequisite for ensuring prosperity, and that the automobile is essential to the guarantee of an efficient mobility system.

Automotive technology is currently marked by an unprecedented flood of innovations. Numerous novelties in the development of vehicles manufactured in serial production occur worldwide on a daily basis, the variety of which having increased by a factor of two from that of about ten years ago.

Since automotive technology represents a relatively highly intensive industrial sector in terms of research and development, many different industries are necessary: information technologies, microtechnology, material technology, production engineering, etc.. These different

branches of industry combine synergistically in the automotive industry, thus explaining the great variety of innovations. The fields of electronic and sensor technology play an especially important role. In this case, not only the "Suboptimization" of the functions matters in the more than fifty controllers of the various aggregates (among others the transmission) of a modern automobile. The achievement of an overall optimum which confer more value to the automobile than the simple sum of the "local" intelligences, through skillful or intelligent combining of such "local" intelligences. A much tighter linking of drive functions (including motor, chassis and car body) is essential in the future, especially in connection to alternative power systems (such as hybrid powertrains containing hydrogen cells).

What are developers of transmissions doing in this respect? Is their position characterized by reacting to other areas of automotive technology? Or are they acting in a comparably creative way? The answer to these questions is more straightforward than it would have been ten years ago: with the broadest range of new transmission concepts, the transmission developers are most definitely in the game as far as the design of future automotive technology is concerned. (see figure 4).

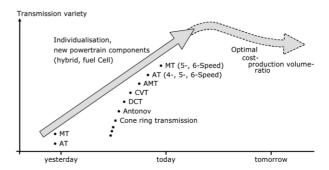


Figure 4: The development of transmission variety

Transmission expansion has generally grown. This allows an optimal compromise in regard to the demands of driving performance and fuel consumption to be realized. Modern transmissions boast a total gear ratio of about six. Larger values will follow in order to cope with future environmental and customer demands.

While the transmission types "Automatic Transmission (AT)" of conventional design with torque converter and planetary gear set and "Manual Transmission (MT)" currently dominate, the variety of concepts has recently increased explosively: Although the above named concepts continue to dominate the market, their variations are not to be ignored. Twenty years ago - as

the 4-speed MT was still the standard - one considered an MT with 6 gears unreasonable due to ergonomical reasons. In Europe today - where MT dominates - one can assume that the 6-speed MT will become the standard.

The AT range is moving in the same direction. The 4-speed AT, however, continues to exist in large quantities, especially in the USA, while the European supplier BMW and its subcontractor ZF have successfully kicked-off the "6-speed AT Wave". The modern 6-speed AT according to the L'epellitier concept is lighter, more compact and - not officially verified by the manufacturing companies - more cost effective, at least in the long run, than its predecessor, the 5-speed AT. This is also the reason why the L'epellitier patent has been purchased and in some cases brought into serial production by numerous transmission manufacturers. This transmission concept has the necessary prerequisites to become a standard in the AT sector.

The CVT concept (Continuously Variable Transmission) remains questionable in terms of its market acceptance. This type of transmission seems to have a better future in Japan (the traditionally stronger CVT market) than in Europe (see figure 5).

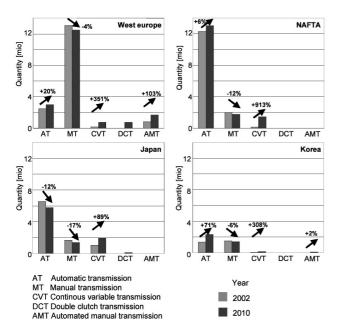


Figure 5: Trends of production volumes of different transmission types

The fact is that in Europe the CVT concept is under a lot of pressure from the 6-speed AT and the "Automated Manual Transmission (AMT)". The optimal efficiency characteristic of the transmission type AMT now exists

in more than 10 automobile makes in serial production in Europe. The first "Double Clutch Transmissions (DCT)" have been recently introduced in Europe, with others in the beginning phase. The concepts of AMT and DCT play only a very little role outside of Europe.

What happens next? Which transmission concept will play the leading role? The questions are actually more complicated: Which CVT concept is worth pursuing: Belt CVT or Toroidal CVT? We need to go one level lower in order to answer this question: Does a gearedneutral CVT of company Torotrak have better prospects than the serially produced and well-known CVT of Nissan Cedric? Can interesting serial solutions be found from the concepts "Antonov" and "Cone ring transmission" (Fa. GIF) if there is intensive further development? Wet or dry clutch for DCT? Could the Torque Converter (TC) be replaced by a wet or dry clutch? The answers to these questions are impatiently expected and crucial. It is a fact that the automation of transmissions will gain more acceptance for reasons of comfort and security. Consequently, MTs will surrender production volumes to AT, CVT, AMT and DCT.

It can be further expected that in serial production the current diversity of transmission concepts will not persist eventually. Predictions rather suggest that in the long run only such transmission concepts will "survive" which offer an optimal ratio of cost/production volume and allow the optimal implementation of naturally all customer-relevant features expected of transmission such as efficiency, comfort, performance etc.. As a matter of course the new power concepts such as hybrid powertrain or - in the long run - electric powertrains using hydrogen technologies will have a considerable influence on the selection of the transmission system. The question of when the new concepts will be implemented depends on additional boundary conditions which are being further discussed: 42 Volt on-bord voltage, availability and secure storage of hydrogen are just two examples.

The field of transmissions remains exiting and therefore interesting.

Another aspect concerns development methods. Upon the introduction of electronic transmission control and its integration into the powertrain management in the early 80s, development engineering has become more complex and extensive (see figure 6).

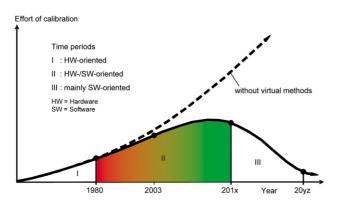


Figure 6: Reduction of calibration effort by using SWoriented development methods

Transmission control mainly assumes the following tasks:

- 1. Choice of gear ratio.
- 2. Control of the gear shifting.
- 3. Fault diagnoses.

In the last two decades, the introduction of numerous new functions was necessary due to constantly increasing demands on ease of driving, comfort and quality. Up to now, the functional parameters, also called calibration parameters, have had to be investigated and determined in extensive test trials for all specific vehicle models and transmission types. Due to the immensely increased number of variants in vehicle-enginetransmission combinations, the extent of calibration work has grown rapidly in the last 20 years. It should also be mentioned that the calibration work can only be accomplished by well-experienced engineers. This is one of the reasons why in the last years research has been done on SW-oriented development methods, whereas up to 1980, alongside the usual construction, only HW-

oriented function development was in the center of attention (see figure 6). Thus, approximately for the last six years, the Institute of Automotive Engineering at the Technical University Braunschweig, Germany, has done intensive work in the following fields:

Hardware-in-the-Loop (HIL): tools for the development and optimization of functions as well as SW tests.

Objective evaluation of shifting comfort of stepped automatic transmissions.

Transfer of the testing from the road to a roller dynamometer in the laboratory and on a dynamometer with combustion engine and DC motor.

Calibration or/and optimization of shifting comfort of stepped automatic transmissions (AT, AMT, DCT) on dynamometers.

Automated shifting comfort calibration and optimization of functions.

Virtual calibration with Hardware-in-the-Loop (HiL). Simulation of representative load populations for parts of the transmission and for the complete transmission. Simulation and optimization of gear ratio with respect to driver, vehicle and road parameters.

The above mentioned virtual development tools, some of which are available for serial development, assist in assuring that the effort and expenditure for research and development will not increase excessively in the next years but can be held within boundaries. It can in fact be expected that in 15 to 20 years the expenditure per transmission calibration will further decrease due to the dominance of the virtual development methodology (i.e. optimisation by simulation). A minor HW-oriented share will, however, always remain, as our customers will further make decisions to purchase vehicles according to subjective criteria instead of virtual development results.

150NmFF車用スチールベルト式新型CVTの開発

Development of a New Steel-belt CVT for 150-Nm Front-drive Cars

山下 裕* Yutaka YAMASHITA

抄 録 近年,環境問題に対する意識が高まりつつある中,自動車の燃費向上要求も強くなってきている.さらに走りの性能に対する期待値も年々厳しくなってきていることから,これらを両立できる技術としてのCVTへの関心が年々高まってきている.これらの市場ニーズに応えるべく,JATCOは150NmクラスFF車用スチールベルト式CVTを開発し,2002年10月に日産自動車(株)様から発売された新型キューブに搭載されたので紹介する.

Summary As awareness of environmental issues has continued to rise in recent years, there have been stronger demands to improve the fuel economy of vehicles. Moreover, customer expectations of driving performance have also become more demanding with every passing year. As a result, interest has been growing every year in continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) as a technology for meeting these conflicting trends. This article describes the new steel-belt CVT that we developed for 150-Nm class front-wheel-drive cars in response to these market needs. This new CVT was adopted on the new-generation Cube that Nissan Motor Co., Ltd. released in October 2002.

1.はじめに

JATCOは,他社に先駆けて1997年に1.8~2.0LクラスFF車用スチールベルト式CVTを発表した.その後1999年に3Lターボエンジン搭載のFR車用トロイダルCVTを開発,2001年に2.5LクラスFF車用スチールベルト式CVTを開発,2002年10月に本稿で紹介する150NmクラスFF車用スチールベルト式CVT(以下本CVTという)を開発した.本CVTは日産自動車(株)様の新型キューブに搭載された.さらに当社は2002年12月に最大トルク350NmをカバーするFF車用スチールベルト式CVTを北米市場に投入し,CVTフルラインアップ化を進めている.Fig. 1に当社のCVTの商品ラインアップを示す.

1. Introduction

In 1997, JATCO led other manufacturers in developing a steel-belt CVT for use on 1.8-2.0L frontwheel-drive cars. Subsequently, we developed a toroidal CVT in 1999 for application to rear-wheel-drive vehicles fitted with a 3.0L turbocharged engine, followed by the development of a steel-belt CVT for 2.5L class frontwheel-drive cars in 2001. October 2002 saw the development of the new steel-belt CVT for 150-Nm class front-wheel-drive cars that is described here. This CVT was adopted on the new generation of the Nissan Cube. Moreover, in December 2002, we put on the North American market a steel-belt CVT for use on frontwheel-drive cars having a maximum torque output of up to 350 Nm. These efforts are leading to the creation of a full CVT lineup. Figure 1 shows our current lineup of CVTs.

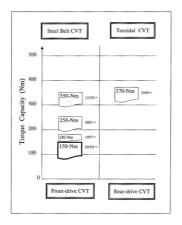


Fig. 1 CVT Line-up

^{*} 第一実験部 Experiment Department No. 1

2. 開発の狙い

2.1. コンパクト化

1.5Lクラスの車への搭載を可能にするため,新規設計の超扁平トルクコンバータを採用し,プライマリープーリーピストンをシングルピストンにして,コンパクトなCVTとした.

2.2. 燃費の向上

エンジンとの協調制御により,燃費を向上させた. 一つは変速スケジュールの改良で,特に低開度側では,エンジンの効率が良い部分を積極的に使用することで,燃費向上を実現した.

さらに,低速ロックアップ制御により加速時の 燃費を向上させ,減速時,低速域まで燃料カット することで大幅に燃費を改善した.

またCVTフリクションに影響が大きいベルトフリクションを下げるために、セカンダリープーリ圧を従来のライン圧直結タイプから独立調圧タイプにすることで、セカンダリ圧を常に必要最小限になるようにした。

2.3. 運転性/動力性能の向上

(1)運転性の向上

運転状況に合わせてドライバが変速モードをマニュアルモードやスポーツモード, Lowモードに手動で切り替えられるようにした. またドライバのアクセル操作を自動判別し,複数の変速線を自動的に切り替えることで,ドライバの要求に応じた加速が得られるようにした.

(2)動力性能の向上

ギア比をワイドレンジ化することで,従来より10% ローギア比とし,発進時の動力性能を向上させた.

3. 基本構成及び特徴

本CVTの主要諸元をTable 1に示す.全体の構成はFig. 2のようになっており,トルクコンバータ,オイルポンプ,フォワードクラッチ,前後進切換え遊星ギア,プライマリープーリ,スチールベルト,セカンダリープーリ,アウトプットギア,リダクションギア,アイドラギア,リングギア,デファレンシャルから構成されている.

2. Development Objectives

2.1. Compact package

To achieve a more compact package for use on 1.5L class cars, this steel-belt CVT features a newly designed ultra-flat torque converter and a single hydraulic piston for the primary pulley.

2.2. Fuel economy improvement

Fuel economy is improved through proactive control of the engine and CVT. One measure taken to improve fuel economy is the adoption of an improved shift schedule that makes effective use of the region of good engine operating efficiency, especially at a small throttle valve opening. In addition, low-speed lockup operation control works to improve fuel economy during acceleration and continues the fuel cut-off during deceleration until the low speed range, thereby achieving a substantial improvement in fuel economy.

Belt friction, which greatly affects overall CVT friction, has also been reduced by controlling the secondary pulley pressure independently, instead of regulating it directly by the line pressure as was done before. This method makes it possible to reduce the secondary pulley pressure to the minimum necessary level at all times.

2.3. Driveability and power performance improvement

(1) Drivability improvement

High levels of driveability and power performance have also been attained. Driveability has been enhanced by enabling the driver to manually select the shift mode, from among a manual shift mode, a Sport mode and a Low mode, that matches the driving conditions. In addition, the driver's operation of the accelerator pedal is automatically detected, and the CVT automatically switches among the multiple shift schedules available to deliver acceleration performance matching the driver's wishes.

(2) Power performance improvement

The adoption of a wider gear ratio range allows the use of a 10% lower gear ratio than that of previous units for improved power performance during standing-start acceleration.

3. Basic Structure and Features

The major specifications and dimensions are given in Table 1. Figure 2 is a main cross-sectional view showing the construction of the CVT. The unit mainly consists of a torque converter, oil pump, forward clutch, forward/reverse actuation planetary gearset, primary pulley, steel belt, secondary pulley, output gear, reduction gear, idler gear, link gear and differential.

Table 1 Ma	jor Specifications	and Dimensions
------------	--------------------	----------------

	Specifications	150-Nn	n CVT	
Capacity	Torque Capacity	150 Nm		
	Max. Eng. Speed	7,000) rpm	
Specifications	Torque Ratio (Torque Converter)	1.90		
	Ratio Range	6.00		
	Pulley Ratio	2.561	~0.427	
	Final Ratio	5.473		
	Fwd/ Rev. Ratio	1.00/1.05		
	Manual Mode	6-speed	1st 2.525	
			2nd 1.671	
	,		3rd 1.218	
			4th 0.990	
			5th 0.787	
			6th 0.584	
Package	Total Length	357.6 mm		
	Eng. ~Differential Center	186 mm		
	Weight	72.8 kg (wet)		

3.1. トルクコンバータ

トルクコンバータの採用で,クリープ性能を持たせることができ,坂道発進や車庫入れの時の運転性を向上した.さらに従来より扁平率を上げた新開発ロックアップクラッチ付トルクコンバータ(215mm)を採用したことで省スペース設計となっている.また耐久性/摩擦特性に優れたロックアップフェーシング材の開発によるロックアップ車速の低速化を可能にして,大幅に燃費を改善した(Fig. 3)

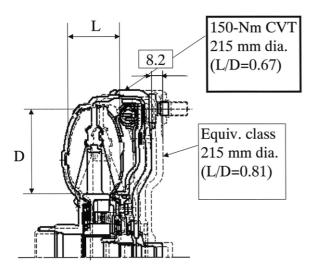


Fig. 3 Cross-sectional View of Torque Converter

3.2. スチールベルト

他社でも実績のあるファンドーネ(Van Doorne's Transmissie)製の24mm幅V型スチールベルトを採用している.スチールリングは12層を採用した.

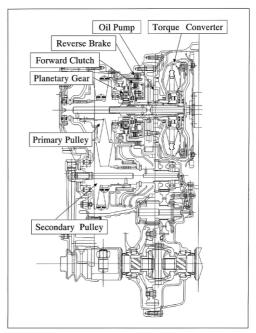


Fig. 2 Main Cross-sectional View

3.1. Torque converter

The adoption of a torque converter enables the CVT to provide creep capability for improved driveability when starting off on an uphill incline or putting the vehicle in a garage. Moreover, the use of a newly developed torque converter with a greater flatness ratio (215 mm diameter) and incorporating a lockup clutch achieves a space-saving design (Fig. 3). A lockup clutch facing material with superior durability and friction performance was developed, enabling lockup operation to be actuated at lower driving speeds for a substantial improvement of fuel economy.

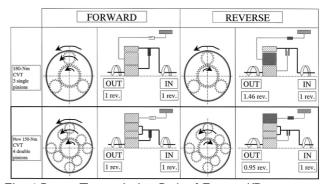


Fig. 4 Power Transmission Path of Forward/Reverse Planetary Gearset

3.2. Steel belt

This CVT adopts a 24-mm-wide Vee belt made by Van Doorne's Tranmissie, which also has a record of use in other companies' CVTs. The steel bands are made of 12 layers.

3.3. 前後進切換え遊星ギア

前後進切り替え部に遊星ギアを採用しているが、 ピニオンギアをダブルピニオンタイプとすること で以下のように動力伝達経路を変更し、リバース ギア比を1.05までローギア化でき、リバースでの登 坂性能を向上させた.さらに従来の3ピニオンから 4ピニオンにすることで、完全な対称構造にして NVH(Noise & Vibration, Harshness)性能を向上させ た(Fig. 4)

3.4. 2方弁タイプリニアソレノイド

油圧制御用に2方弁タイプリニアソレノイドを3ヶ採用しており,従来より精度の高い油圧制御を可能にして,変速性能向上やフリクション低減につなげている.

リニアソレノイドは個々に精度のばらつきを持っていることから,個々にキャリブレーション作業を行う必要があるが,ユニット出荷時にソレノイド個々にキャリブレーション作業を行い,その結果をコントロールバルブASSYに組み込まれたROMASSYに書き込み,ATCU接続時にこのROMASSYからキャリブレーション結果を読み出すことで,ソレノイド個々のばらつきを補正している.

キャリブレーション作業には,既に弊社FR5速ATで採用している電子キャリブレーションシステム(ソレノイドのばらつきに合わせて油圧を自動的にしかも短時間で補正するシステム)を採用しており,これにより制御油圧精度向上のほか,リニアソレノイドの単体精度の緩和によるコストダウンも可能にしている.

3.5. 内蔵タイプリニアインヒビタースイッチ

従来変速機の外に付けていたインヒビタースイッチをユニットに内蔵した.その結果,外装時に必要だった防水シールや,耐塩害/耐亜硫酸ガス等の環境対策を廃止でき,コスト削減できた.

さらにこの直線的にストロークするインヒビタースイッチにしたことで、マニュアル弁に直付けすることができ、これにより従来行っていたレンジ位置合わせが不要になった.またTable 2に示すように、4つのスイッチによるON/OFFの組み合わせでレンジ位置をコード出力しているが、隣り合うパターンで変化するビットが常に1つだけになるようなグレイコードを採用していること、更にレンジとレンジの間に中間レンジを設定することで、断線等が発生した場合の異常検出を可能にしている.

3.3. Forward/reverse actuation planetary gearset

The forward/reverse actuation mechanism adopts a planetary gearset that is built with four double pinions, which changes the power transmission path as illustrated in Fig. 4. This has made it possible to achieve a low reverse gear ratio of 1.05 for improved hill-climbing capability in reverse gear. Moreover, the change from three pinions previously to four pinions has given this steel-belt CVT a completely symmetrical structure that further reduces noise, vibration and harshness (NVH).

3.4. Linear solenoids with two-way valve

Three linear solenoids with a two-way valve are used to achieve more accurate hydraulic pressure control than before, thereby improving shift performance and reducing friction.

Because accuracy varies from one linear solenoid to another, it is necessary to calibrate each one separately. Each linear solenoid is calibrated at the time of shipment and the results are written to a ROM unit incorporated in the control valve assembly. At the time the automatic transmission control unit (ATCU) is connected, the calibration results are read from the ROM unit to correct the variability in accuracy of each linear solenoid.

Calibration work is done with an electronic calibration system adopted previously for a JATCO 5-speed automatic transmission designed for rear-wheel-drive cars. This system automatically generates hydraulic pressure matching the variability in accuracy of the linear solenoids, enabling them to be calibrated in a short period of time. Besides improving hydraulic pressure control accuracy, the system also contributes to cost savings by allowing the accuracy requirements of the individual linear solenoids to be relaxed.

3.5. Built-in linear inhibitor switch

The inhibitor switch that has previously been attached to the outside of the transmission is now housed inside the unit, resulting in a cost reduction by making it possible to discontinue various measures that were needed for protection against the harsh vehicle environment. Those measures included waterproofing seals and protection against damage by salt, sulfurous acid gas or other substances.

In addition, the use of a linearly stroking inhibitor switch allows direct attachment of the switch to the manual valve body, thereby eliminating the need for the selector lever position adjustments that were done previously. As shown in Table 2, the On/Off states of four contact switches are combined to output the code indicating the selector lever position. A gray code has been adopted that allows only one bit to be changed in adjacent patterns at all times. This feature, as well as the provision of intermediate positions between the usual selector lever positions, makes it possible to detect abnormal patterns, such as when a broken wire or some other problem occurs.

Table 2 Inhibitor Switch Patterns

Shift position	SW1	SW2	SW3	SW4
P	0	0	0	0
P-R	0	0	0	1
R	1	0	0	1
N-R	1	1	0	1
N	1	1	0	0
N-D	1	1	1	0
D	1	1	1	1
D-L	0	1	1	1
L	0	1	1	0

1: ON 0: OFF

3.6. ATF(トランスミッションフルード)

新規に開発したフルードを採用 .低温でのオイル 粘度を低下させることで ,低温時の油圧アクチュエー タの作動性を向上させ ,油圧制御領域を拡大させる ことができた .

3.7. 通信形態

車両側との通信形態はCAN(Controller Area Network)を採用し、エンジンもしくは車両とリアルタイムで通信を行っている。例えばエンジンからトルク信号をもらうことで、実トルクに合った必要最小限の油圧を設定することができ、従来に比べ油圧によるフリクションを低減することで燃費を改善した。

3.8. 制御

3.8.1.油圧制御システム

Fig. 5に油圧制御システム概略図を示す.

オイルポンプで発生した油圧は,ライン圧ソレノイドでライン圧に調圧され,そのライン圧からセカンダリープーリソレノイドで制御されるセカンダリープーリ圧と,ステップモータとプライマリープーリコントロールバルブで制御されるプライマリープーリ圧に調圧され,この両油圧のバランスでアップ/ダウン変速を制御している.

またクラッチレギュレータ弁で調圧されたクラッチ圧から,ロックアップソレノイドによりフォワードクラッチ圧,あるいはリバースブレーキ圧に調圧されている.またロックアップソレノイドの出力回路をスイッチングソレノイドでフォワード/リバースクラッチ回路からロックアップクラッチ回路に切り替えることで,ロックアップクラッチ締結圧も調圧できるようになっており,1つのリニアソレノイドで2つの油圧をコントロールしている.

3.6. Automatic transmission fluid (ATF)

A newly developed fluid was adopted that allows the oil viscosity to be reduced at low temperature to improve the low-temperature performance of the hydraulic pressure actuators and expand the hydraulic pressure control range.

3.7. Communication system

A Controller Area Network (CAN) is used to facilitate real-time communication between the CVT and the engine or other vehicle components. For instance, the optimum hydraulic pressure can be set to match the actual engine torque by obtaining the torque signal from the engine. Compared with previous units, this reduces friction for an improvement of fuel economy.

3.8. Control

3.8.1. Hydraulic pressure control system

A schematic diagram of the hydraulic pressure control system is shown in Fig. 5. The hydraulic pressure generated by the oil pump is adjusted to the line pressure by a line pressure solenoid. The line pressure is regulated to the secondary pulley pressure, which is controlled by a secondary pulley solenoid, and to the primary pulley pressure, which is controlled by a stepping motor and a primary pulley control valve. The balance between these two hydraulic pressures controls upshifts and downshifts.

The clutch pressure, which is regulated by a clutch pressure regulator valve, is controlled to the forward clutch pressure or to the reverse brake pressure by a lockup solenoid. In addition, the output circuit of the lockup solenoid is switched between the forward clutch/reverse brake circuit and the lockup clutch circuit by a switching solenoid, making it possible to regulate the lockup clutch engagement pressure as well. Consequently, one linear solenoid is capable of controlling both hydraulic pressure levels.

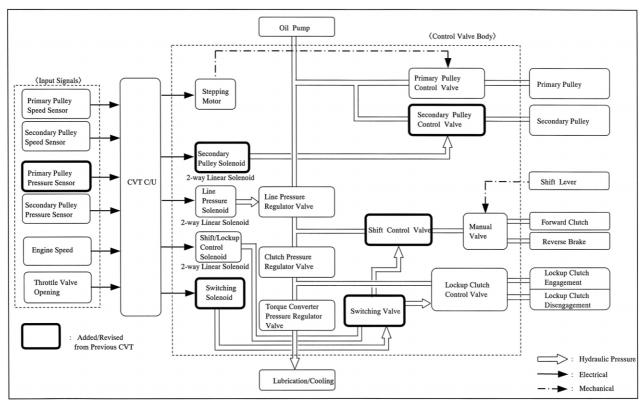


Fig. 5 Hydraulic Pressure Control System

3.8.2. 変速制御システム

97年に当社が日産自動車(株)様と共同で開発した2.0LクラスFF車用スチールベルト式CVTと同じ変速制御機構をもっているが,本CVTはセカンドプーリ側の圧力を従来のライン圧直結タイプから,専用ソレノイドで独立して制御する方式に変更しており,従来に比ベセカンドプーリ油圧制御精度を向上させることができた.それにより様々な走行条件に応じた油圧最適制御が可能となり,変速性能向上に繋がるほか,ベルトにかかる油圧を従来より低く設定できることでフリクション低減/燃費改善に寄与している.

3.8.3. セレクト制御

N-DやN-R操作時の油圧制御は,従来のアキュムレータによる制御ではなく,クラッチ圧直接電子制御システムを採用することで,油圧精度を向上させ様々な環境条件においても最適な油圧制御が可能になり,N D/N Rショックを改善できた.またアキュムレータ部品を削減することでコストも削減した.

3.8.2. Shift control system

The shift control mechanism is the same as that of the steel-belt CVT for 2.0-liter class front-wheel-drive vehicles that Nissan and JATCO developed in 1997. However, this new 150-Nm CVT incorporates a dedicated solenoid for controlling the secondary pulley pressure independently instead of regulating it directly by the line pressure as was done previously. This change has made it possible to improve hydraulic pressure control accuracy compared with the previous unit. As a result, the hydraulic pressure can be optimally controlled to match a wide range of driving conditions. Besides contributing to improved shift performance, this enhanced controllability also allows the hydraulic pressure applied to the steel belt to be set at a lower level than before, which helps to reduce friction for improved fuel economy.

3.8.3. Shift control

Hydraulic pressure during N-D and N-R shifts is controlled by an electronic control system that directly regulates the clutch pressure instead of controlling it by means of an accumulator as was done previously. The adoption of this new control system improves hydraulic pressure control accuracy, enabling the hydraulic pressure to be optimally controlled to match diverse driving environment conditions. As a result, this provides improved control of engagement torque during N-->D and N-->R shifts. It has also led to a cost reduction by eliminating the accumulator.

3.8.4. 変速モード

Dポジションの自動変速モード以外に,スイッチ 操作あるいはレバー操作することで6速マニュアル 変速モード,スポーツモード,Lレンジの3つの変 速モードを選択することができる . 1)Dレンジは最 ローから最ハイまで自動的に変速するモード,こ の状態からマニュアルメインスイッチを押すこと で2)6速マニュアル変速が可能なマニュアルモード に入り,ステアリングにあるアップ/ダウンスイ ッチでマニュアル変速が可能になる.またSレンジ スイッチを押すことで,3)Dレンジのロー側のみを 使用するSportモード,またセレクトバーをLに入れ ることで,4)さらにロー側の最ロー付近のみを使 用するLowモードが選択でき、ドライバの意思、車 両走行状況に応じた駆動力を得ることができる. マニュアルモードは理論的には何速でも設定可能 だが,ここでは実用性上最適と思われる6速に設定 している(Fig.6)

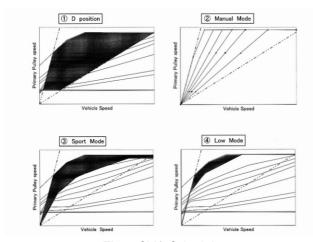


Fig. 6 Shift Schedules

3.8.5. 発進 / オトパワー / リニアモード変速線

ドライバの要求に応じた加速性能が得られるように,通常のDレンジノーマル変速線に加えて,車速やアクセル開度,アクセルペダル操作速度に応じて自動的に切り替わる以下の3つの変速線を持っている.

(1)発進モード:発進時の強い加速要求に対応した 変速線で,高TVOでの発進性向上の為に,ノー マル変速線に対しローギア化した変速線(.Fig. 7)

3.8.4. Shift modes

In addition to automatic shifting when the selector lever is in the D position, drivers can choose three other shift modes—a 6-speed manual shift mode, a Sport mode and a Low range mode—by operating switches or the selector lever (Fig. 6).

(1) In the D position mode, the CVT shifts automatically from the lowest to the highest gear ratio. From this position, drivers can select (2) the 6-speed manual shift mode by pressing the manual main switch, allowing the transmission to be shifted manually by the upshift/downshift buttons mounted on the steering wheel. In addition, pressing the S range switch selects (3) the Sport mode in which only the low-ratio shift region of the D position is used. Moreover, moving the selector lever to the L position allows drivers to select (4) the Low range mode in which the shift region is limited only to the vicinity of the lowest gear ratio. This choice of shift modes enables drivers to obtain power performance matching their wishes and the driving conditions. Theoretically, the manual mode can be set to provide any number of speed ranges, but six speeds have been set for the new CVT as this was thought to be the optimum number in terms of practical use.

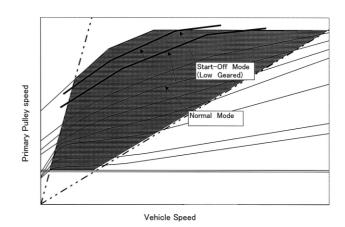


Fig. 7 Start-off Mode Shift Schedule

3.8.5. Start-off, Auto power and Linear mode shift schedules Besides the normal shift schedule when the selector lever is in the D position, the new CVT also incorporates the three shift schedule modes explained below. It switches automatically among them according to the vehicle speed, throttle valve opening and the speed at which the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, in order to deliver the acceleration performance demanded by the driver.

(1) Start-off mode: Designed to meet the demand for powerful acceleration when starting off, this shift schedule (Fig. 7) improves standing-start acceleration at a large TVO by using lower gearing than that of the normal mode shift schedule. (2)オートパワーモード:走行中の中間的な加速要求に対応した変速線で,低TVOの比較的速いアクセル踏込み操作時に切り換る.ノーマル変速線に対し全域ローギア化した変速線(Fig. 8)で,より力強い加速を得る事ができる.Fig.9にオートパワーモードの効果として,エンジン回転と車両前後加速度のイメージ波形を示す.

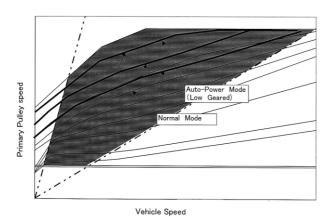


Fig. 8 Auto Power Mode Shift Schedule

(3)リニアモード:走行中の更に強い加速要求に対応した変速線で,高TVOの更に速いアクセル踏込み操作時に切り換る.変速速度を変速途中で遅くすることで,エンジン回転上昇と車両加速度の伸び感を維持できるようになっている. Fig. 10にリニアモードの効果として,エンジン回転と車両前後加速度のイメージ波形を示す. (2) Auto power mode: This shift schedule corresponds to the demand for passing acceleration while on the road (Fig. 8). The CVT switches to this mode when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal relatively quickly at a small TVO. This shift schedule provides more powerful acceleration than the normal mode shift schedule by using lower gearing in all speed regions. Figure 9 shows conceptual waveforms of the engine speed and vehicle longitudinal acceleration, which illustrate the effect of the Auto power mode.

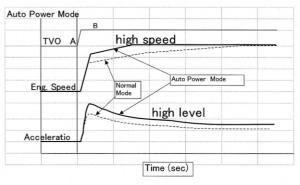


Fig. 9 Auto Power Mode Acceleration Performance

(3) Linear mode: This shift schedule provides even more powerful acceleration while the vehicle is moving. The CVT switches to this shift schedule when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal at a faster speed with a large TVO. This shift schedule slows the shift speed midway in the execution of a shift so as to sustain a feeling of increasing engine speed and acceleration. Figure 10 shows conceptual waveforms of the engine speed and vehicle longitudinal acceleration, illustrating the effect of the Linear mode.

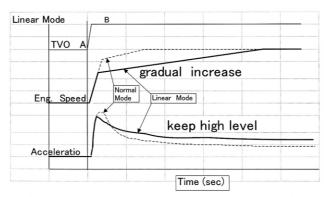


Fig. 10 Linear Mode Acceleration Performance

3.8.6. 登坂制御

登坂であることを検知すると(勾配信号はエンジンン側からもらう),アクセル踏み増し時のロー側へのシフトダウン量を平坦路での踏み増し時より大きくしたり,コースト変速線を上げることで足離し状態からの再加速性と,上り坂での動力性能を向上させている.

3.8.6. Uphill shift control

This steel-belt CVT provides improved power performance for climbing hills when it detects that the vehicle is traveling uphill (based on the road grade signal obtained from the engine controller). That is accomplished by downshifting more to a lower gear ratio when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal further, compared with the amount of downshifting done on a flat road when the driver presses the accelerator pedal deeper. It also raises the coasting shift line to improve re-acceleration performance when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal again after coasting with the accelerator released.

3.8.7. 降坂制御

下り勾配を検知したら(勾配はCVTで検知), プリー比をロー側にシフトさせることで自動的にエンジンブレーキを効かせている. 更に勾配に応じてプーリー比を変え, 最適なエンジンブレーキが得られるようにしている.

3.8.8. ロックアップ車速低速化

新摩擦材の開発により、耐熱性や摩擦特性が向上し、ロックアップ車速を下げることができた、ここではロックアップクラッチ締結完了17~18km/h(A/C OFF)を可能にしている.

3.8.9. コースト時ロックアップ締結圧学習制御

低速かつアクセルペダル足離し状態でロックア ップクラッチを締結させると,アクセルペダルの ON-OFF操作で車両の前後振動が発生するが,ここ ではコースト時のロックアップ締結油圧をエンジ ントルクを伝達できる必要最小圧に設定すること で(Fig. 11), コースト時からアクセルを踏込んだ時 にロックアップクラッチを一瞬滑らせることで、 車両前後振動の発生を防止することができた、な お車両使用環境に応じてコーストエンジントルク は逐次変化することから,どのような状況におい ても必要最小限のロックアップ締結油圧に設定で きるように,コースト時ロックアップ締結圧学習 制御を採用している、この制御は、コーストロッ クアップ締結後ロックアップ圧を徐々に下げて行 き、ロックアップクラッチの微小滑りを検知した 時点でロックアップ圧を一定値持ち上げるもので, 常にコースト時のエンジントルクを伝達できる必 要最小圧でのロックアップクラッチ締結を可能に している.

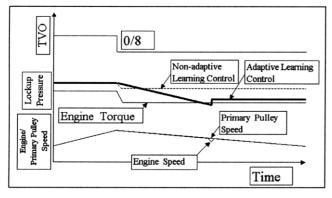


Fig. 11 Adaptive Learning Control of Lockup Pressure During Coasting

3.8.7. Downhill shift control

If the CVT itself detects a downhill grade, it shifts the pulley ratio to the low side to automatically apply engine braking. It also varies the pulley ratio according to changes in the road grade so as to provide the optimum level of engine braking.

3.8.8. Lower vehicle speed for lockup operation

The vehicle speed at which lockup operation is initiated has been lowered by developing a new friction material with improved thermal resistance and friction characteristics. This makes it possible to complete lockup clutch engagement at a vehicle speed of 17-18 km/h when the air-conditioner is turned off.

3.8.9. Adaptive learning control of lockup pressure during coasting

When the lockup clutch is engaged at low vehicle speeds with the accelerator pedal released, the driver's On-Off operation of the accelerator pedal produces longitudinal vehicle vibration. With this new CVT, however, the lockup clutch engagement pressure during coasting is set at the minimum necessary level that enables the transmission of engine torque. This works to prevent longitudinal vehicle vibration by allowing the lockup clutch to slip instantaneously when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while the vehicle is coasting. Engine torque during coasting changes gradually according to the driving environment. Accordingly, adaptive learning control of the lockup pressure during coasting has been adopted to enable the minimum necessary lockup clutch engagement pressure to be set under all sorts of conditions. The control algorithm gradually reduces the lockup pressure following lockup clutch engagement while the vehicle is coasting and it raises the lockup pressure to a certain specified level as soon as micro-slipping of the lockup clutch is detected. This control procedure thus facilitates lockup clutch engagement at all times at the minimum necessary pressure for transmitting engine torque during coasting (Fig. 11).

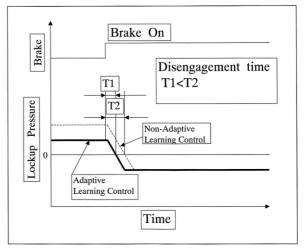


Fig. 12 Lockup Clutch Disengagement Time

また低 µ 路での急ブレーキ操作時でも,ロックアップクラッチ締結圧を従来より下げることで,ロックアップクラッチ解除時間を従来より短くすることで,耐エンスト性能を向上させた(Fig. 12)

4. まとめ

本CVTの採用により,2002年10月に新しく発売された日産新型キューブで,以下のような燃費/動力性能の効果が得られた(Fig. 13)

(1)燃費

同型車同エンジン(1.4L)のAT搭載車に対し,日本の10-15モードで4.9%向上(17.2 16.4km/L). 日産社内実用性評価モードでは11.8%向上.

(2)動力性能

同型車同エンジンのAT搭載車に対し,0-100km/h タイムで5.8%短縮(13.1 13.9sec) In addition, resistance to engine stalling during sudden braking on low-m road surfaces has also been improved. This is accomplished by reducing the lockup clutch engagement pressure to a lower level than before so as to shorten the lockup clutch disengagement time compared with that of previous units (Fig. 12).

4. Conclusion

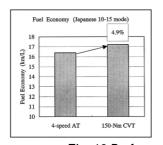
The adoption of this new 150-Nm steel-belt CVT for front-wheel-drive cars on the new generation of the Nissan Cube launched in October 2002 has resulted in the following improvement of fuel economy and power performance (Fig. 13).

(1) Fuel economy improvement

Fuel economy under Japan's 10-15 test mode has been improved by 4.9% (16.4 17.2 km/L) compared with the same vehicle model equipped with the same 1.4-liter engine and an automatic transmission. Nissan's in-house test data for the practical driving mode show a fuel economy improvement of 11.8%.

(2) Power performance improvement

In terms of power performance, acceleration time from 0 to 100 km/h has been shortened by 5.8% (13.9 13.1 sec) compared with the same vehicle model fitted with the same engine and an automatic transmission.



Acceleration Time (0-100 km/h)

15

14

3

12

11

10

4-speed AT 150-Nm CVT

Fig. 13 Performance Comparison

5. 謝辞

本CVTは本稿で述べた通り,運転性,燃費,動力性能全てにおいて優れた性能を実現することができた.今回の開発にあたり,多大なご協力をいただいた日産自動車(株)パワートレイン開発本部関係諸氏に感謝する.

5. Adknowledgments

As described here, this new steel-belt CVT delivers outstanding performance in every respect, including driveability, fuel economy and power performance. The author would like to thank various individuals in the Powertrain Engineering Division of Nissan Motor Co., Ltd. for their invaluable cooperation in connection with the development of this new steel-belt CVT.

Author



Yutaka YAMASHITA

FF車用高トルク容量新世代ベルトCVTの開発

Development of New-Generation Belt CVTs with High Torque Capacity for Front-Drive Cars

菅野 一彦*

安保 佳寿*

平林 雄二**

渡部 省司**

柴山 尚士***

Kazuhiko SUGANO

Keiju ABO

Yuji HIRABAYASHI

Shouji WATANABE

Takashi SHIBAYAMA

抄 録 新世代ベルトCVTは,グローバル市場を前提 に,コンパクト化,軽量化,ワイドレシオ化を主要な 開発目標とした.1997年から量産開始した2.0~2.5L クラスCVTの開発経験に基づき,新世代CVTとして商 品性をさらに高めたベルトCVTとした.

本稿では,高トルク容量新世代ベルトCVT(以下 CVT3)の主要仕様,パワートレイン構造,油圧制御シ ステム,電子制御システム及びCVT3を搭載した車両 の性能向上について述べる.

New-generation CVTs are premised on Summary use in global markets and have been developed with the aim of achieving a more compact design, lighter weight and a wider ratio range, among other objectives. Their product appeal has been substantially enhanced based on previous experience acquired in developing a 2.0-2.5liters class CVT.

This paper describes the major specifications of the New-generation CVTs, powertrain construction, pressure control system and experimental data measured with a test vehicle incorporating this CVT, which show its effect on improving fuel economy.

1. はじめに

新世代ベルトCVTは,100~350Nmのトルク容量に 対し,3タイプのCVTでカバーしている.本稿で紹介 するCVT3は,最大トルク350Nmをカバーする3タイ プCVTの中で最もトルク容量の高いCVTである.

新世代CVTの商品性向上のため、ハードウェア として超々扁平トルクコンバータ、シングル油圧 室プライマリープーリ,他の部品を新開発した. 制御系としてはプーリ油圧制御の新開発,各油圧 制御の精度向上開発を、小型油圧制御バルブの開 発と共に実施した.

2. 開発の狙い

1997年実用化した2.0-2.5LクラスCVTの開発実績, 市場実績に基づいた新世代ベルトCVT(Fig.1)の主 な目標値を示す.

- (1)コンパクト化
- (2)軽量化
- (3)ワイドレシオ化

グローバル市場に対応し,ステップATからの載 せ換え,更なる低燃費,動力性能向上を図るCVTを 達成するため、上記項目を主要な開発目標とした、

Product Development Center No.1

Experiment Department No.1

第一性能設計部

Product Performance Engineering Department No.1

1. ABSTRACT

New generation includes three belt CVTs, ranging in torque capacity from 100 to 350 Nm. The CVT3 described in this paper has the largest torque capacity of the three, handling torque levels up to a maximum of 350 Nm.

To improve the product appeal of these newgeneration CVTs, a super ultra-flat torque converter, single pressure chamber primary pulley, and other components were developed. In this connection, a new pulley pressure control system was developed, the pressure control valve was reduced in size and pressure control accuracy was enhanced, among other improvements.

2. DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES

The following major objectives were set for the development of the new-generation CVTs(Fig. 1), based on the development experience and market results attained with the previous CVT model that was released in 1997 for use with 2.0-liter class engines.

- (1) Compact size
- (2) Light weight
- (3) Wide ratio range

Development work focused on these principal objectives with the aim of achieving CVTs that would have global market applicability, could be substituted for existing automatic transmissions and would provide further improvements in fuel economy and power performance.

第一商品開発本部

第一実験部



Fig. 1 High Torque Capacity New Generation CVT

3. 主要仕様

CVT3の主要仕様について、Hyper CVTとの比較をTable1に示す.CVT3の主断面をFig.2に示す.CVT3のトルク容量は、プーリ軸間拡大とプーリ押力増加により、Hyper CVTの250Nmに対し350Nmに増大した.更に、燃費向上のため、プーリ変速比幅を拡大した.プーリ各部品の強度、ベルト単体強度を、オイルポンプ吐出容量と共に増大した.プーリ変速比幅拡大、コンパクト化とユニットの高効率化をHyper CVTの開発経験に基づきバランス設計した.ベルト、プーリの変速比幅は、Hyper CVTの5.359から5.401に拡大し、3.5 L エンジン適用CVTとして、2.5 L エンジン用CVTより広い変速比幅を確保した.CVT3は、各部品のコンパクト化、レイアウト改善により、Hyper CVTに対し全長で約9.1mm短縮した.

FF車における大型エンジン搭載車の適用を基本としているため、V型エンジンのスタータモータをCVT3側に配置できるパワートレイン構造とした、新開発小型コントロールバルブをユニット下部に配置し、ケース前方にスタータモータを配置する十分なスペースを確保した、

Table 1 Major specifications of CVT3 and Hyper CVT

Belt CVT		CVT3	Hyper CVT
Engine	Туре	3.5L V6	2.5L L4
	Max torque (Nm/rpm)	350/4400	250/4400
	Position of	CVT side	Engine side
	starter Motor	Engine side	
CVT Ratio	Ratio range	5.401	5.359
	Low	2.371	2.326
	\$	S	\$
	OD	0.439	0.434
	Final gear ratio	4.878~	5.473, 5.743
		6.327	
	Manual-shift	6-speed	6-speed
CVT Dimensions	Overall length (mm)	386.9	396.0
-	Distance between Pulley shafts (mm)	178	168
Type of primary-pulley Pressure Chambers		Single	Dual
Maximum pulley pressure (MPa)		5.7	4.6
Oil pump discharge capacity (cm³ /rev)		22.4	19.6

3. MAIN SPECIFICATIONS

The main specifications of the belt CVT3 with high torque capacity are compared with those of the Hyper CVT in Table 1. A main cross-sectional view of the CVT3 is shown in Fig. 2. The torque capacity of the CVT3 has been increased to 350 Nm, compared with 250 Nm for the Hyper CVT, primarily by increasing the distance between the pulley shafts and the pulley pushing force. The ratio range of the CVT3 has also been expanded to reduce fuel consumption further. The strength of the pulley components and that of the belt have been increased as well as increasing the oil pump discharge capacity. In addition, the CVT3 design strikes a good balance based on previous experience acquired in developing Hyper CVT among the measures for expanding the ratio range, its compact construction and higher efficiency. The ratio range achieved by the belt and pulleys of the CVT3 has been expanded to 5.401 compared with 5.359 for the Hyper CVT and obtained wider ratio range as a CVT for 3.5liter engine than CVT for 2.5L engine. The CVT3 is 9.1 mm shorter in overall length than the Hyper CVT as a result of adopting more compact components and improving their layout.

Based on the premise that the CVT3 would be mated to large engines on front-wheel-drive cars, it has been designed to allow the starter motor of V-type engines to be mounted at the side of the unit. Accordingly, the pressure control valve is located at the bottom of the CVT3 so as to allow ample space for installing the starter motor on the front side of the case.

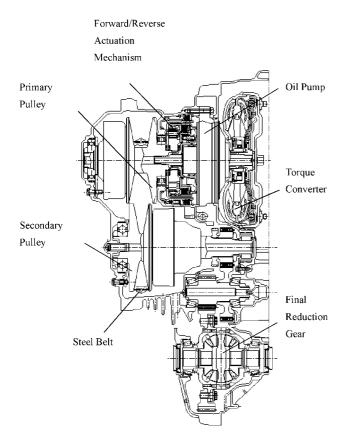


Fig. 2 Main cross-sectional view

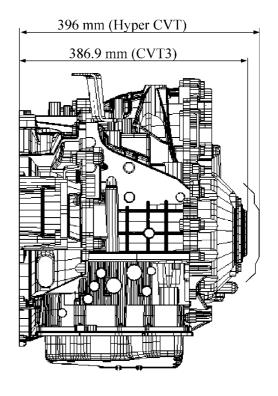


Fig. 3 Front view of CVT3

4. パワートレイン構造

基本構造は、1997年に量産開始したHyper CVTと同一構造であり、新世代ベルトCVTとして、主要部品を新開発した。

エンジン合わせ面からサイドカバーまでの全長 (Fig.3) 短縮のために,扁平率61%の超々扁平トルクコンバータを開発した.既存トルクコンバータの扁平率83%に対し更に扁平化した.目標流体性能を達成するため,トルクコンバータ内のATF流れを解析した.流体性能シミュレーションと実測検証から,扁平率61%のインペラ,タービン,ステータの形状を設計した.その結果,既存トルクコンバータに対し,軸長を約23mm短縮できた.

オイルポンプは,高油圧クレセントレス内接ギア式ポンプを新開発した.高回転時は流量制御弁によりコントロールバルブへ供給する流量とメインストレーナを通過する流量を制御している.本流量制御により,油圧制御精度の向上,ポンプキャビテーションノイズの回避,ポンプ全効率の向上を図った.

4. POWERTRAIN CONSTRUCTION

The powertrain construction is fundamentally the same as that of the Hyper CVT released in 1997, and the key components were finely designed and engineered to accomplish the development objectives.

To shorten the overall length from the mating face with the engine to end of the side cover (Fig. 3), a super ultra-flat torque converter with a flatness ratio (A/B in Fig. 4) of 61% was developed. The flatness ratio was reduced from a figure of 83% for the previously used torque converter. The flow of the automatic transmission fluid (ATF) through the torque converter was analyzed repeatedly in order to achieve the required hydrodynamic performance. The impeller, turbine and stator geometries were then designed so as to form a flatness ratio of 61%. As a result, the overall length was shortened by approximately 23 mm, compared with the specification of the previous torque converter.

A high-pressure crescent-less internal gear pump was developed as the oil pump. At high engine speeds, the flow control valve regulates the flow rate supplied to the pressure control valve and the flow rate through the main strainer. This works to improve pressure control accuracy, avoids cavitation noise and also improves the operating efficiency of the oil pump.

前後進切り替えクラッチ部は、1組の遊星ギアと2組のクラッチで構成している。後進時の駆動力を十分に確保するため、リバースギア比をHyper CVTの0.683から0.745へLowギア化した。上級車両への搭載を前提とし、ギアノイズ低減のためにシングルピニオン構造を採用した。ピニオンギア数は、Hyper CVTの3個から6個に増加し起振力を低減した。

トルクコンバータのアウトプットはインプットシャフトを通り,遊星ギアのリングギアに伝達される. プライマリープーリは,遊星ギアのサンギアに接続している.Dレンジ時は,リングギアとサンギアをクラッチで締結する.Rレンジ時は,リバースクラッチを締結しキャリアとケースを固定する.

プライマリープーリの外径は、ユニット最低地上高を上げるために、コントロールバルブのケース取り付け位置を上方に設定する必要から小径化した.Hyper CVTでは、プーリASSYの最大外径は油圧室である.このため、油圧室の外径縮小の必要性があった.プライマリープーリの受圧面積の縮小化にあたり、セカンダリープーリ油圧をプライマリープーリ油圧以下に制御する必要から、新プーリ油圧制御を開発した.

ベルトはプッシュ式金属ベルトを採用し,エレメント30mm幅,両サイドのリングは12枚仕様とした.プーリ軸間距離は,Hyper CVTの168mmに対し10mm拡大した178mmとしトルク容量増大に対応した(Fig.5).

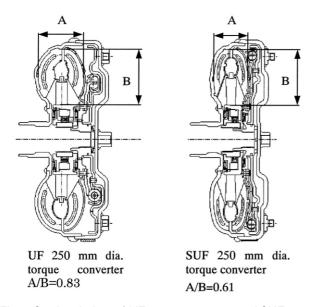


Fig. 4 Sectional view of UF torque converter and SUF torque converter

The forward/reverse actuation mechanism consists of a planetary gearset and two clutches. In order to increase available drive torque when backing up, the gear ratio in reverse was lowered to 0.745 from 0.683 for the Hyper CVT. A single pinion construction was also adopted to reduce gear noise when the planetary gearset operates, based on the assumption that the CVT3 would be adopted on upscale car models. The number of pinion gears was increased to six, compared with three in the Hyper CVT, with the aim of reducing excitation forces. The torque converter output is transmitted to the ring gear of the planetary gearset via the input shaft. The primary pulley is connected to the sun gear of the planetary gearset. With the selector lever in the D position, the ring gear and sun gear are coupled by a clutch. In the R position, the reverse clutch is engaged to

The outer diameter of the primary pulley had to be reduced so that the pressure control valve could be attached at a higher position on the transmission case in order to raise the minimum ground clearance of the CVT. In the case of the Hyper CVT, the outermost diameter of the pulley assembly is the diameter of the pressure chamber. That meant the outer diameter of the pressure chamber had to be reduced. Therefore, a new pulley pressure control system was developed to support the smaller pressure area of the primary pulley.

lock the carrier to the case.

The CVT3 uses a metal push belt consisting of 30-mm-wide elements and 12-layer bands on either side. As shown in the side view in Fig. 5, the distance between the pulley shafts has been increased by 10 mm to 178 mm, compared with 168 mm for the Hyper CVT, in order to achieve greater torque capacity.

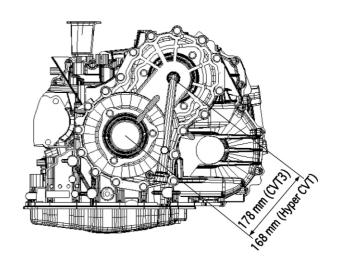


Fig. 5 Side view of CVT3

高トルク伝達時に効率よく金属ベルトを冷却するため、潤滑油を2個所からベルトへ供給する構造とした・ベルトを構成するエレメントは、プーリへの進入時、プーリからの開放時、プーリ表面とのマイクロスリップにより発熱するため、各プーリ進入部付近に潤滑油を供給した・

Hyper CVTでは,高速運転時を中心にベルトを冷却管理し,セカンダリープーリへの進入部に1個所潤滑油を供給した.CVT3では,牽引を含めた高トルク発進時のLOWレシオ時プライマリープーリ側ベルト発熱にも着目し,プライマリープーリへの進入部にも潤滑油を供給した.その結果,同一ベルト冷却性能を前提に,ユニット全体の効率向上のために,おおよそ3L/minの潤滑油量を削減できた.

固定プライマリープーリ&固定セカンダリープーリは,ベルトのアライメントを正確に管理し,ベルト伝達効率向上,またベルトノイズ低減のため,ベアリングリテーナによってサイドカバーに固定する構造とした.この構造により,プライマリープーリを支持している両端のベアリングがケースとサイドカバーに圧入されているHyper CVTと比較し,ベルト伝達効率向上,ベルトノイズを低減した.

ベルト&プーリの伝達トルク容量増大による磨耗対応として,マイクロショットによりプライマリープーリ表面を硬化した.

セカンダリープーリシャフトのフロント部は,ベアリングをハウジングマウント構造とし,フロントベアリングの小径化を特徴としている.この構造により,大容量大径トルクコンバータの配置と全長短縮を容易にした.

以上の新部品の開発によりCVT3の主要な開発目標であるコンパクト化,軽量化を変速比の幅のワイド化と共に達成できた。

Fig.3に, 2.0~2.5LクラスのHyper CVTに対する, 9.1mmの全長短縮を示す. Fig.6に, ユニットのDRY重量低減量を示す. 既存ベルトCVTの相場と比較してCVT3は,約8Kg軽い.

The belt is constructed such that lubrication oil is provided on the inside at two places for efficient cooling of the belt when transmitting high levels of torque. The elements making up the belt generate heat due to microslipping that occurs between them and the pulley surface as the belt travels around the pulleys.

In the case of the Hyper CVT, special attention was paid to heat generation during high-speed operation and lubrication oil was provided at one location at the point where the belt enters the secondary pulley. With the CVT3, attention was also paid to belt heat generation on the primary pulley during the Low ratio by high torque start including traction, and lubrication oil is also provided at the point where the belt enters the primary pulley. As a result, the lubrication oil flow rate has been reduced by approximately 3 L/min for an improvement in overall unit efficiency while still attaining the same level of belt cooling performance.

The fixed primary and secondary pulleys are secured to their respective side covers by means of a bearing and a retainer so as to control the belt alignment with good accuracy, improve the belt's power transmission efficiency and reduce belt noise. This construction improves belt efficiency and reduces belt noise, compared with the Hyper CVT where both bearings of the primary pulley are press fitted to the case and side cover.

To increase belt and pulley torque capacity with minimum pulley surface wear the surface of primary pulley was hardened by micro shot treatment.

The front layout of the secondary pulley shaft features a smaller front bearing diameter with a housing-mounted construction. This design facilitates the use of a large-capacity torque converter and shortens the overall length. As the foregoing explanation indicates, the powertrain was developed to achieve a compact, lightweight construction.

The CVT3 is 9.1 mm shorter in overall length than the 2.0-2.5liters class Hyper CVT as shown in Fig. 3. Reduction of the dry weight of the CVT assembly is shown in Fig.6. Compared with the typical weight of existing belt CVTs, the CVT3 is approximately 8 kg lighter.

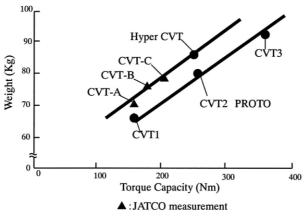


Fig. 6 Weight and torque capacity

5.制御システム

CVT3の制御システム図をFig.7に示す.CVT3のATCUへの主な入力信号は

- (1) エンジン回転数信号
- (2) スロットル開度信号
- (3) プライマリープーリ回転信号
- (4) セカンダリープーリ回転信号である.

基本制御に使用するこれらの信号の他に, CVT 内部からの入力信号として

- (5) プライマリー油圧信号
- (6) セカンダリー油圧信号
- (7) AT油温信号
- (8) インヒビタースイッチ信号

車両からの信号として

- (9) ブレーキスイッチ信号
- (10)ABS信号
- (11) VDC信号
- (12)エアコン信号
- (13)エンジン水温信号がある.

5. PRESSURE CONTROL SYSTEM

A block diagram of the control system of the CVT3 is shown in Fig. 7. The principal signals input into the CVT3 control unit (C/U) for control use include the following:

- (1) engine speed signal
- (2) throttle position signal
- (3) primary pulley speed signal
- (4) secondary pulley speed signal

Apart from these signals for basic control use, other input signals from within the CVT include:

- (5) primary pulley pressure signal
- (6) secondary pulley pressure signal
- (7) ATF temperature signal
- (8) inhibitor switch signal

Signals from the vehicle include:

- (9) brake switch signal
- (10) ABS signal
- (11) VDC signal
- (12) air-conditioner signal
- (13) engine coolant temperature signal

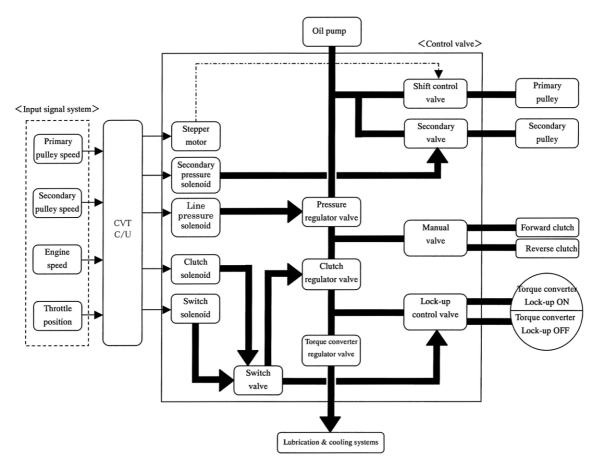


Fig. 7 Block diagram of control system

CVT3の油圧制御バルブは,ユニット本体の下記アクチュエータを制御する.電装品の詳細について, Hyper CVTとの比較を含めTable 2に示す.

The CVT3 control unit manages the following actuators used with this transmission. The specifications of the electronic parts are given in Table 2 in comparison with those of the Hyper CVT.

Table 2 Electronic parts specifications of CVT3 and Hyper CVT

Pressure	CVT3	Hyper CVT
Lock-up clutch	Linear solenoid 💥	Duty solenoid
Line pressure	Linear solenoid	Duty solenoid 💥
Secondary pulley	Linear solenoid	Not used
Forward/reverse clutch	Linear solenoid ¾	Duty solenoid 💥
Primary pulley	Stepper motor+servo link (Vertical)	Stepper motor+servo link (Horizontal)

*Common use

(1)ステップモータ

ステップモータは,サーボリンクを介して接続しているシフトコントロールバルブを制御することにより,プーリ比を制御する.本ステップモータのステップ数は,変速比全域で約200ステップある.このステップ数は,プーリ比を制御するため,デジタル制御している.

(2)ライン圧ソレノイド

このソレノイドはCVT3の最高ライン圧を制御し、プーリ圧の元圧を供給する.ユニット効率を向上させ、油圧制御の精度を確保するため、リニアソレノイドを採用した.ソレノイドの出力信号は、オイルポンプの吐出圧をコントロールするプレッシャーレギュレーター弁の制御圧として使用している.

(3)セカンダリープーリ圧ソレノイド

プライマリープーリ油圧室のシングル化により (Table 1), コントロールバルブとケース合わせ面を上げることができ, CVT3の最低地上高を上方設定した.

プーリ比のHIGH側を制御するために必要不可欠な条件は、プーリ押し力をFpri(プライマリープーリ推力)にする事である。両プーリの受圧面積は約141cm²であり、セカンダリー圧をプライマリー圧以下に制御する必要がある。減圧弁であるセカンダリーバルブに、本ソレノイド信号圧を入れセカンダリー圧を制御する・油圧制御精度向上のため、リニアソレノイドを採用した。

(4) クラッチ圧ソレノイド

スイッチソレノイドとの組み合わせにより,このソレノイドは前後進クラッチ圧,ロックアップ(以下L/U)クラッチ圧を制御する.N Dレンジのセレクト時のスムーズなセレクト感の達成,L/Uクラッチ圧のスムーズな制御達成のためにリニアソレノイドを採用した.

(1) Stepper motor

This electrical component controls the pulley gear ratio by regulating the shift control valve that is connected to the stepper motor via a servo link. The number of steps of the stepper motor is approximately 200 over the entire ratio range. This step number is controlled digitally to control the pulley ratio.

(2) Line pressure control solenoid

This solenoid controls the maximum line pressure of the CVT3 and provides the source pressure for the pulley pressures. A linear solenoid has been adopted to ensure accurate pressure control for improving CVT efficiency. The output signal of this solenoid is used as the control pressure of the pressure regulator valve that controls the discharge pressure of the oil pump.

(3) Secondary pulley pressure control solenoid

A single pressure chamber (Table 1) has been adopted for the primary pulley to allow the pressure control valve to be attached to the transmission case at a higher position. As noted earlier, that was done to raise the minimum ground clearance of the CVT.

A prerequisite condition for controlling the pulley ratio on the High side is that it must be possible to control the pulley pushing force such that Fpri (primary) > Fsec (secondary). Since the oil pressure area of both pulleys combined is approximately 141 cm², the secondary pulley pressure must be controlled to a level below the primary pulley pressure. To accomplish that, the pressure signal of this solenoid is fed into the secondary valve, which functions as a pressure reducing valve, to control the secondary pulley pressure. A linear solenoid has been adopted for improved pressure control accuracy.

(4) Clutch control solenoid

In combination with the switch solenoid, this solenoid controls the forward/reverse clutch pressure and the lock-up clutch pressure. A linear control solenoid has been adopted to achieve a smooth responsive shift feel when moving the selector lever from the N to the D position and to accomplish smooth control of the lock-up clutch pressure.

(5)スイッチソレノイド

On-Offソレノイドは,クラッチ圧ソレノイドの信号油圧を切り替えるスイッチバルブを制御している.1つのソレノイドを前後進クラッチ圧,L/Uクラッチ圧に共用している.

以下の油圧バルブをCVT3で採用している.

(1)プレッシャーレギュレータバルブ このバルブは,CVT3の最高油圧を制御し,両プ

ーリ圧の元油圧を供給する.

(2)シフトコントロールバルブ

このバルブは,ステップモータのステップとサーボリンクによりプライマリープーリ油圧を制御する.プライマリープーリのストロークをサーボリンクにフィードバックし,ハンチングの無ハプーリ変速を実現している.

(3)セカンダリーバルブ

このバルブは,セカンダリー圧をライン圧以下に制御するバルブである.

(4)クラッチレギュレータバルブ

ライン圧を元圧とし,前後進クラッチ圧,L/Uクラッチ圧を制御する.

(5)マニュアルバルブ

クラッチ圧ソレノイドの信号圧で制御されたクラッチ圧を,前進クラッチ油圧室,後進クラッチ油圧室に切り替え制御する.

(6)L/Uクラッチ圧制御用ソレノイド

クラッチ圧制御用ソレノイドの信号圧に基づき, L/Uクラッチ圧の制御を行う.

(7)トルクコンバータレギュレータバルブ

クラッチレギュレータ圧を元圧とし、トルクコンバータ内圧を制御する.このバルブを通った潤滑油は、オイルクーラを通過し、パワートレイン内部の潤滑に使われる.

サーボリンクによる変速制御

Fig.8に示したように、プライマリープーリストローク(プーリ比)を、シフトセンサにより機械的にサーボリンクを介してシフトコントロールバルブを制御する.これにより、目標プーリ比は、ステップモータのデジタル制御により安定的に達成できる.機械的フィードバックリンクにより、油温等による油圧制御環境の変化に影響されにくく、車両運転環境において安定した目標プーリ比を制御している.このリンクは、ユニットのコンパクト化のため、特に車両安全構造によるサブフレームのスペースを確保するため、車両に垂直に配置されている.

(5) Switch solenoid

This On-Off solenoid controls the switch valve that switches the pressure signal of the above-mentioned clutch control solenoid. This allows one solenoid to be used in common to switch the forward/reverse clutch pressure and the lock-up clutch pressure.

The following hydraulic valves are used in the CVT3.

(1) Pressure regulator valve

This valve regulates the line pressure that controls the maximum pressure level in the CVT3 and provides the source pressure for both pulley pressures.

(2) Shift control valve

This valve controls the primary pulley pressure by means of the integrated use of the step number of the stepper motor and the shift servo link. Haunting-less pulley shift is realized by feedback of stroke of primary pulley to servo link.

(3) Secondary pulley valve

This valve functions to control the secondary pulley pressure to a level below the line pressure.

(4) Clutch regulator valve

Using the line pressure as the source pressure, this valve controls the forward/reverse clutch pressure and lock-up clutch pressure.

(5) Manual valve

This valve switches the clutch pressure, which is controlled on the basis of the pressure signal of the clutch control solenoid, between the forward clutch pressure chamber and the reverse clutch pressure chamber.

(6) Lock-up control valve

Based on the pressure signal of the clutch control solenoid, this valve controls the lock-up clutch pressure.

(7) Torque converter regulator valve

Using the clutch regulator pressure as the source pressure, this valve controls the pressure in the torque converter. The lubrication oil that flows through this valve passes through an oil cooler and is then used to lubricate the parts of the powertrain.

SHIFT CONTROL SERVO LINK

As shown in Fig. 8, a feedback link that operates in tandem with the shift control valve has been adopted to control the travel of the primary pulley (i.e., pulley ratio) mechanically. This makes it possible to achieve the target pulley ratio stably through digital control of the stepper motor. The feedback link facilitates stable control of the target pulley ratio in the vehicle operating environment without being appreciably influenced by changes in pressure control conditions such as the fluid temperature. The link is positioned vertically in the vehicle to allow a compact CVT design and in particular to ensure space for the subframe that contributes to a safe vehicle construction.

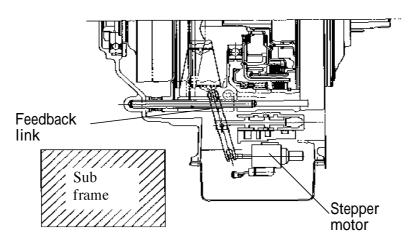


Fig. 8 Sectional view of CVT3 and subframe

個々の油圧バルブの油圧特性測定

CVT3は個々のコントロールバルブの油圧特性を計測し,各ユニットのCVT-C/U内に記録されている複数のMAPから計測した特性値にもっとも近いMAPデータを選び出す.選ばれたMAPデータは,CVT3内にあるROMに記録され,CVT-C/UはROM内の油圧特性のMAP番号を呼び込み,制御指令として使用している.このキャリブレーションシステムにより,油圧制御の精度向上,CVT全体の効率向上を促進した.

油圧アクチュエータ

油圧制御システムの作動部を以下に記載し、 Fig.2の主断面図、Fig.7の制御システム図に示す.

- (1)プライマリープーリ
- (2)セカンダリープーリ
- (3)フォワードクラッチ
- (4)リバースクラッチ
- (5)L/Uクラッチ

油圧制御バルブボディの共用化

新世代CVTでは制御部品の共用化を図るために, CVT3とCVT1(150Nmクラス)は同じバルブボディを使用している.油圧のチューニングは,例えば車両感度に左右されるセレクト性能では,セレクトレバーをN Dにセレクトした時の前後進クラッチの油圧特性をセパレートプレートのオリフィス径のチューニング設計で実施している.

CONTROL PRESSURE MEASUREMENT

The pressure characteristics of each pressure control valve in the CVT3 are measured and the measured values are used to select characteristics that most closely match the operating map data preprogrammed in the CVT-C/U for each powertrain component. The selected map characteristics are recorded in a ROM incorporated in the CVT3, and the CVT-C/U calls up the map numbers of pressure characteristics stored in the ROM for use in issuing control commands. This pressure calibration system facilitates outstanding pressure control accuracy and contributes to improving the overall efficiency of the CVT.

HYDRAULIC ACTUATORS

The actuators of the pressure control system are listed below and are shown in the main cross-sectional view in Fig. 2 and in the block diagram of the control system in Fig. 7.

- (1) Primary pulley actuator
- (2) Secondary pulley actuator
- (3) Forward clutch actuator
- (4) Reverse clutch actuator
- (5) Lock-up clutch actuator

COMMON USE OF CONTROL VALVE BODY

The CVT3 and the CVT1 share the same pressure control valve body in order to promote common use of control parts among the new-generation CVTs. Shared use of the control valve body has been achieved, for example, through the design of the engagement pressure characteristics of the forward/reverse clutches when moving the selector lever from the N to the D position. That is done by tuning the orifices of the separator plates so that the characteristics match the character of the vehicle.

6. 実車性能

車両テスト1

これまで,CVT3ユニットについて説明してきた.このCVT3の開発目的である,コンパクト化,軽量化,ワイドレシオ化については,さまざまなユニット構成部品の新開発により達成したことを説明した.

ワイドレシオ化については,燃費向上と動力性能向上を狙ったものである.この章ではCVT3を搭載した車両による燃費について述べる.CVT3の燃費を精度よく計測するために,同じ車両,同じエンジンを使用しCVT3と4ATを載せかえて測定した.

試験車両

Table 3にCVT3を搭載した試験車両の主要仕様を示す.なお,4ATを搭載した量産車両を種車とした.

Table 3 Main specifications of test vehicle

Vehicle weight	1573 kg
Tire running radius	0.31 m
Front area	2.10 m^2
CD	0.33

エンジン仕様

Table4に試験に使用したエンジンの主な仕様を示す、安定した燃費測定を行うため、約5000Kmの慣らし運転後燃費比較を行った。

ギアレシオ

Table5にCVT3及び4ATのギア比を示す.CVT3のワイド化した変速比幅は,燃費,動力性能の向上をバランスよく配分するために,LOW(1速)側からHIGH(4速)側に均等配分するようファイナルギア比を設定した.CVT3のレシオ幅5.401は,4ATの4.013に対し約35%ワイド化を実現した.スルーギア比は,1速で4ATの10.596に対しCVT3は12.265であり,約16%のローギア化を達成した.4速で4ATの2.640に対しCVT3は2.271であり,約16%のハイギア化を達成した.このワイド化を,燃費と動力性能へバランスよく配分した.

6. EXPERIMENTAL MEASUREMENT

VEHICLE TESTS 1

The preceding sections have presented an overview of the CVT3. Various components of this CVT were explained to illustrate how the development objectives of a compact design, light weight and a wide ratio range were accomplished.

The third objective of a wide ratio range is intended to improve vehicle fuel economy and power performance.

This section explains the fuel economy improvement obtained in tests conducted with a test vehicle fitted with the CVT3. In order to measure the effect of the CVT3 on improving fuel economy and power performance with good accuracy, measurements were made using the same engine and the same vehicle, which was alternately fitted with the CVT3 and a 4-speed stepped automatic transmission.

TEST VEHICLE

The main specifications of the test vehicle fitted with the CVT3 are given in Table 3. A production model equipped with a 4-speed stepped AT was selected as the test vehicle.

Table 4 Main specifications of 3.5 liter V6 engine

Туре	V6 DOHC
Displacement	3498 cm ³
Max torque	333 Nm/4400 rpm
Max power	188 kw/5800 rpm

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

The major specifications of the engine used in the tests are given in Table 4. To obtain stable fuel consumption measurements, the test vehicle was driven approximately 5,000 km and then a fuel consumption comparison was made between the two transmissions.

GEAR RATIOS

Table 5 shows the through gear ratios of the CVT3 and the 4-speed stepped AT that were used in the tests. The final gear ratio of the CVT3 was set such that its wide ratio range was evenly distributed between the Low (1st gear) and High (4th gear) sides with the aim of having a well-balanced ratio distribution for improving fuel economy and power performance.

Specifically, the 5.401 ratio range of CVT3 was approximately 35% wider than the 4.013 ratio range of the 4-speed AT. In terms of the through gear ratio, the 4-speed AT had a 1st-gear ratio of 10.596 while that of the CVT3 was 12.265, which meant that the latter was geared lower by approximately 16%. The 4th-gear ratio of the 4-speed AT was 2.640 while that of the CVT3 was 2.271. In other words, the CVT3 was also geared approximately 16% higher on the High ratio side. This wider ratio range is designed to provide a good balance between fuel economy and power performance.

Table 5 Through gear ratios used in the tests

Gear ratio	CVT3	4-speed AT
1st (low)	12.265	10.596
2nd	1	5.879
3rd	1	3.805
4th (high)	2.271	2.640

シフトスケジュール

Fig.9にCVT3のシフトスケジュールを示す.米国における試乗とキャリブレーションにより設定したシフトスケジュールを使用した.動力性能が目標達成されたシフトスケジュールにて燃費を測定した.

4ATのシフトスケジュールは,市場実績があり,動力性能を満足しているシフトスケジュールを使用した.

テスト結果

Fig.10に燃費測定結果を示す.LA4モードとHWY モードを測定しCOMB燃費で比較を行った.CVT3 搭載時の燃費は4AT搭載時に対し,約14%向上している.燃費向上の要因は,CVT3のワイドレシオ化がベースとなっている下記2項目によるものである.

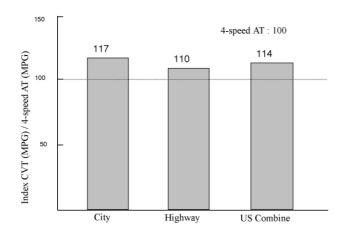


Fig. 10 Test results of fuel consumption

(1)走行中のエンジン回転数低回転化

ステップATは、中間ギアを使用できない、また、必要駆動力上、ステップATでは1つLOW側のギア比を使用する必要がある走行条件でも、CVT3は、エンジン回転数に制限されることなく、ギア比を無段階に選択でき、エンジンを燃費最適な状態で運転できる。

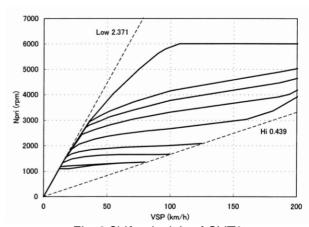


Fig. 9 Shift schedule of CVT3

SHIFT SCHEDULE

The shift schedule of the CVT3 used in the tests is shown in Fig. 9. The shift lines used were determined on the basis of repeated test drives conducted in the United States and calibrations. Shift lines that provided acceptable power performance in the test drives were used in making fuel consumption measurements.

The shift schedule of the 4-speed AT used in the test had a record of previous use in the market and were presumed to provide acceptable power performance.

TEST RESULTS

The measured fuel consumption results are shown in Fig. 10. Measurements were made under the LA4 and highway driving modes and the figures were then combined for comparison. The fuel economy level obtained with the CVT3 was approximately 14% better than that obtained with the 4-speed AT. As has been reported elsewhere, this fuel economy improvement can be attributed to the following two major factors based on the wide ratio range of the CVT3.

(1) Lower engine speeds while driving

With a stepped AT, a vehicle cannot operate at intermediate gear ratios. In contrast to the use of one gear ratio on the Low side of a stepped AT, the CVT3 allows the use of a ratio range that is not restricted by the engine speed, which allows the engine to run at an optimum operating point.

(2)車両減速時のフューエルカット領域の拡大

ステップATでは、減速時にフューエルカットを維持するには、L/Uクラッチを解除しないと大きな変速ショックが発生する、例えば、4L/U状態でフューエルカットを継続している場合、ある車速で3速にダウンシフトする必要がある。このときギア比分の段差感が発生するため、3速にダウンシフトする前に、L/Uクラッチを解除する必要がありエンスト回避のため、フューエルカットは解除される、対照的にCVT3は、連続的にギア比を制御できるため、L/Uクラッチを車速約15km/hまで解除する必要がなく、フューエルカットを継続できるため、燃料消費を減らすことができる。

車両テスト2

車両テスト1では,ユニット違いによるCVT3の 燃費効果について述べた.ここでは,CVT3を搭載 した車両と他の量産同一カテゴリー車の燃費比較 について述べる.

試験車両

Table6に試験車両の主要仕様を示す.CVT3の変速比幅はA車(5AT)に対し約6.5%ワイド化,B車(4AT)に対しては約40%ワイド化となっている.

Table 6 Main specifications of test vehicle (AWD)

	Nissan Murano	A Car	B Car
Engine Type	V6 3.5L	V6 3.5L	V6 3.0L
Max torque	333Nm/4400 rpm	339Nm/3500 rpm	301Nm/4400 rpm
Max power	183 kw/5800 rpm	194 kw/5750 rpm	164 kw/5800 rpm
Vehicle weight	1796 kg	2005kg	1780kg
T/M	CVT	5AT	4AT
Ratio Spread	5.40	5.07	3.86
Fuel Economy (City/Hwy)	20/24	17/23	18/22

テスト結果

Fig.11に燃費測定結果を示す.

City燃費とHWY燃費からCOMB燃費の比較を行った.CVT3搭載車両の燃費は,同排気量のA車(5AT)に対し,約12%低燃費である.またB車(4AT)に対しては,10%低燃費である.

(2) Expansion of fuel cut-off region during vehicle deceleration

With a stepped AT, if the fuel supply is continuously cut off during vehicle deceleration, large shift shock can occur unless the lock-up clutch is disengaged. For instance, continuous cut-off of the fuel supply in a locked-up state in 4th gear requires a downshift to 3rd gear at a certain vehicle speed. Since there is a step-like difference in gear ratios, the lock-up clutch must be disengaged when the downshift to 3rd gear is executed. Accordingly, fuel consumption cannot be reduced if the fuel cut-off is discontinued. In contrast, because the CVT3 can continuously vary the gear ratio, the fuel cut-off can be maintained until a low vehicle speed of around 15 km/h without any need to disengage the lock-up clutch, making it possible to reduce fuel consumption.

VEHICLE TEST 2

Vehicle Test 1 shows CVT's effect of fuel consumption compared with different unit. This section shows the fuel economy comparison between vehicle adopting CVT3 and other produced vehicles categorized same group.

TEST VEHICLE

Main specifications of test vehicle are shown in table.6. Ratio spread of CVT3 is 6.5% wider than A car (5-stepped AT), and 40% wider than B car (4-stepped AT).

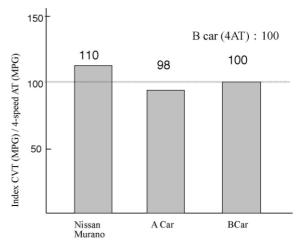


Fig. 11 Test results of fuel consumption (Combined)

TEST RESULTS

The results of fuel consumption tests are shown in Fig.11. These indexes were calculated measured city and highway fuel consumption. Fuel consumption of vehicle adopting CVT3 is better fuel economy approx. 12% compared with A car (5-stepped AT) which has 3.5 liter engine, and 10% compared with B car (4-stepped AT).

CVTにより,エンジンを燃費最適な状態で運転できることが低燃費の要因となっている.特に車速変化の多い(ATでは変速回数が多くなりエンジン回転の変動が多い)Cityモード燃費(Fig.12)では,約17%燃費差が見られる.

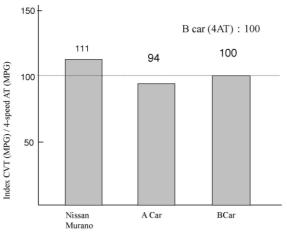


Fig. 12 Test results of fuel consumption (City driving mode)

7. まとめ

(1)コンパクト化

コンパクトで高トルク容量ベルトCVTである CVT3は,超々扁平トルクコンバータの新開発,プライマリープーリ外径の小径化,セカンダリープーリフロントベアリングの前方配置及び小径化,ステップモータレシオ制御のためのサーボリンクの垂直配置等により実現できた.

車両の安全構造ニーズから、CVT3には全長短縮化、最低地上高アップ、サブフレームのスペース確保が要求された.CVT3はこれらの要求を満足させるコンパクト化を実現した.

(2)軽量化

CVT3は既存CVTの重量相場より約8kgの軽量である.これは,上記コンパクト化,および個々の部品の軽量化により実現した.

This result was obtained by controling engine at the best fuel consumption. Compared with stepped AT which has relatively high frequency of shifting, CVT has relatively constant engine revolution, as a result of this difference city fuel consumption is better fuel economy approx. 17%.

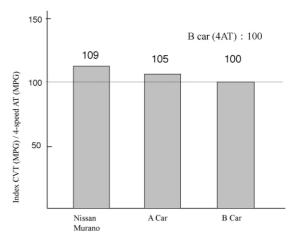


Fig. 13 Test results of fuel consumption (Highway driving mode)

7. CONCLUSION

(1) Compact size

A compact belt CVT with high torque capacity has been developed by adopting a super ultra-flat torque converter, reducing the maximum outer diameter of the primary pulley, optimizing the layout of the front bearing of the secondary pulley and reducing the bearing diameter, and using a stepper motor and a vertically positioned servo link for ratio control, among other measures. Further advances in the construction of safer vehicles require that CVTs be shorter in overall length, have greater minimum ground clearance and allow sufficient space for a sub-frame. The CVT3 described here achieves a compact design that meets all of these requirements.

(2) Light weight

The CVT3 is approximately 8 kg lighter than the average weight of existing belt CVTs. This has resulted from the more compact unit design described above and the total weight reductions achieved for individual components.

(3)変速比幅のワイドレシオ化

CVT3はレシオ幅5.401を達成した.一般的に,高 トルクエンジン車両は,同じレシオ幅での低トル クエンジンの車両より走行性能は優れる.CVT3は 2.0 - 2.5 L 用Hyper CVTに対し, 更にワイドレシオ であり、高トルク容量かつ変速比幅のワイドレシ オ化を実現した.

ワイドレシオ化は,コンパクト化,軽量化,高 効率化と共に,同一車両の燃費測定において既存 の4ATに対し14%の燃費向上を達成した.

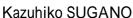
(3) Wide ratio range

The CVT3 provides a wide ratio range of 5.401. Generally a vehicle with a high torque engine has good performance by using same gear range which is used for smaller vehicles with smaller engines. CVT3 has higher torque capacity with wider ratio range than Hyper CVT for use with 2.0 - 2.5 liter engine.

This wider ratio range, together with the compact design, lighter weight and higher efficiency of the CVT3, contributes to an estimated 14% improvement in fuel economy over a conventional 4 - speed stepped automatic transmission, based on the results of fuel consumption measurements made with an actual vehicle.

Authors







Keiju ABO





Yuji HIRABAYASHI Shouji WATANABE Takashi SHIBAYAMA

ダイヤモンドマチックの技術

Diamondmatic's Technologies

安盛善

Yoshi YASUMORI

抄録 2002年4月に三菱自動車工業株式会社様(以下三菱自動車という)よりAT・CVTの開発・生産部門が分離し、ダイヤモンドマチック株式会社が発足、この4月ジヤトコ株式会社と合併するに至った、今後は各々が培ってきた技術を融合し、世界を凌駕するAT・CVTの専門メーカとして更なる発展を目指している、本稿では、ダイヤモンドマチック(株)の技術の歴史と特徴を紹介する。

Summary Mitsubishi Motors Corporation (MMC) spun off its AT and CVT development and production divisions in April 2002 to establish Diamondmatic Co., Ltd. (DMC), which subsequently merged with JATCO in April 2003. By fusing the technologies accumulated by each company over the years, we aim to achieve further growth in the coming years as the world's leading specialized manufacturer of ATs and CVTs. This article describes the history and major features of the technologies developed by DMC.

1. 技術の歴史と特徴

ダイヤモンドマチック(株)は京都に本社を置いた.この地はもとは三菱重工業株式会社様(以下三菱重工という)の京都精機製作所だった.1970年に三菱重工より自動車部門を分離した際,三菱自動車京都製作所は,乗用車・産業機器用エンジン及り、要に受して位置づけられた。歯車加工の工作機・工具製作部門及びエンジンバルブ製造部門及びエンジンバルブ製造部門及びエンジンバルブ製造部門民・生産部門は三菱自動車の所属となった。そのため歯車関係の技術分野では三菱重工時代からの長い歴史があり、関連学会との関係等も長く続いているのが特徴である.

自動車会社となると車両やエンジンの華やかさに比べ、トランスミッション部門は目立たぬ存在になりがちだが、その開発・生産には広範囲の技術が必要とされ、所属した技術者はその自負心と不屈の精神を持って、三菱グループの量産トランスミッション部門としてグループ内の他の技術部門と切磋琢磨し、常に技術の革新に勤め、今日のダイヤモンドマチックの技術を築き上げてきた。

1. History and Features of DMC's Technologies

The site of DMC's head office in Kyoto used to be the Kyoto Machinery Works of Mitsubishi Heavy Industries, Ltd. (MHI). When the automotive division was separated from MHI in 1970, it became MMC's Kyoto Plant, which was positioned as a major components factory, responsible for the development and manufacture of engines and transmissions for passenger cars and forklifts. The division that manufactured machine tools and cutters for machining gears and the engine valve manufacturing division remained with MHI, while the transmission development and production division, including gear manufacturing, became part of MMC. Consequently, engineering fields related to gears have a long history at the plant dating back to MHI's time, and still another feature is that relations with associated learned societies have continued over many years.

At automakers, the transmission division tends to have an inconspicuous existence compared with the more colorful work of the body and engine divisions. Nonetheless, the development and production of transmissions requires wide-ranging technologies, and the engineers involved in the mass-production transmission division worked assiduously with the other engineering divisions in the Mitsubishi Group. With their aspirations and unyielding spirit, they constantly strove to make technological innovations and built up DMC's technologies to their present levels.

^{*} ジヤトコ株式会社 取締役 専務 JATCO Ltd Executive Vice President & Member of the Board

ATについては1970年代より国産化が始まり,三菱自動車は独自の開発で1975年よりFR車用ATの生産を開始し,その後1979年には業界に先駆けてFF車用の横置き本格3速ATを世に出し,その後1983年にFF車用電子制御4速AT,1994年からは車載方法・内蔵部品を改良した新タイプに移行し,1995年にFF車用5速ATを生産するに至った.更にこのFF車用ATの部品を共用したFR車用5速ATの生産を1997年から開始し,京都工場でのAT生産量は月産6万台に達している.

これに平行して軽自動車用トランスミッション も1981年にFR車用2速AT,1984年にFF化,1987年 にFF車用3速AT,1993にFF車用4速と発展した.FR 車用も4速ATを1998年から生産しており,これら は岡山県の三菱自動車の水島製作所で車体ライン と直結して生産している.

また1980年代後半よりCVTの開発に着手し,1990年代前半に実用化した.燃費低減が重要視されるようになった2000年4月に1.3~1.5L用のCVTを生産開始,韓国や台湾にも単体輸出,更に2002年11月に発売されたコルトは全車CVTを搭載し,新鋭八木工場のCVT生産量は月産2万台に近づくレベルに至っている.

これらの新製品を生み出してきた開発部門の主力は愛知県岡崎の三菱自動車開発本部にある。もともと三菱自動車にとって京都製作所は乗用車用エンジン・トランスミッションの開発から生産までを担当するコンポーネント事業所だったが、車という商品を総合的に開発するために岡崎の開発本部へ開発関係が集約された。そのためトランスミッション開発部門の大半も京都から岡崎へ移ったが、試作や試験部門は京都にあり、生産技術部門とのコンカレントな生産準備の推進や生産品の市場品質情報と連動させて継続的品質改良の促進を図っている。

2.三菱グループ他社との協業

このようにダイヤモンドマチック(株)は自動車の進歩に歩調をあわせ、常に業界最先端のトランスミッションを開発・生産してきたが、最近では環境・エネルギー問題の顕在化とともに、エンジンとの統合制御による燃費の最適化とか安全への要求の高まりにより4WSやTCLのようなアクスルとの統合制御など、電子制御の分野で三菱電機株式会社様との協業で成果をあげてきている。

Domestic production of ATs began in the 1970s. In 1975, MMC put into production an AT for rear-wheel-drive cars that it had developed with its own technologies. Subsequently, it led the industry in bringing out in 1979 a full-fledged 3-speed AT for transversal mounting on front-wheel-drive cars. That was followed in 1983 by an electronically controlled front-drive 4-speed AT, which evolved into a new type of transmission in 1994 as a result of improving the constituent components and mounting method. That led to the production of a front-drive 5-speed AT in 1995. Moreover, a rear-drive 5-speed AT that shared parts with this front-drive AT went into production in 1997. The AT production volume at the Kyoto plant has now reached 60.000 units a month.

In parallel with these units, transmissions were also being produced for minicars, beginning with a rear-drive 2-speed AT in 1981. A front-drive version was launched in 1984, followed by a front-drive 3-speed AT in 1987 and further expansion to a front-drive 4-speed AT in 1993. A rear-drive 4-speed AT also went into production in 1998. The latter transmissions are built on a line directly connected to the vehicle assembly lines at MMC's Mizushima Plant in Okayama Prefecture.

Development of CVTs was launched in the latter half of the 1980s, and implementation on production vehicles was achieved in the early 1990s. Production of CVTs for use with 1.3-1.5L engines was launched in April 2000, at a time when greater emphasis came to be put on reducing fuel consumption, and these units have also been exported to South Korea and Taiwan. Additionally, CVTs were adopted on all models of the new Mitsubishi Colt that was rolled out in November 2002. Monthly production of CVTs at the state-of-the-art Yagi Plant is now approaching a level of 20,000 units.

The main development group responsible for creating these new transmissions is at MMC's Research & Development Office in Okazaki, Aichi Prefecture. Originally, the Kyoto Plant was the center of MMC's component business and was responsible for the development and production of passenger car engines and transmissions. Development personnel were later concentrated at the Okazaki Research & Development Office in order to undertake comprehensive product development activities for cars. For that reason, the majority of the transmission development group also moved from Kyoto to Okazaki, but the prototyping and testing groups remained in Kyoto. The intention is to promote concurrent production preparations with the production engineering group and to facilitate continuous quality improvements in connection with market quality data on production vehicles.

2. Cooperation with Other Mitsubishi Group Companies

DMC has consistently developed and produced transmissions at the cutting edge of the industry in line with the ongoing progress of automobiles. Along with the emergence of environmental and energy issues in recent years, results have been achieved in the field of electronic control in collaboration with Mitsubishi Electric Corporation. Examples include optimization of fuel consumption through integrated control of the engine and transmission, as well as integrated control with the throttle in the case of 4WS and Traction Control (TCL) in response to demands for improved safety.

また、低騒音を実現するための歯車工法の開発やフレキシブルで高効率なNCセルトランスファーマシンラインの構築には三菱重工の協力によるものが多くある.

アジア・アセアン地域の三菱自動車以外の自動車 メーカにもAT・CVTの単体輸出を拡大できたのは 世界各国に広く展開し、現地に精通している三菱 商事株式会社様の力によるところといえる.

国際的な経済変化とともに日本独特の「系列」による連携が見直されていく中で,まさに私たちダイヤモンドマチック(株)も三菱グループを離れ,オープンでグローバルな新ジヤトコの一員として更なる飛躍を期しているが,そのためには従来以上に三菱関連各社のご協力も必要である.

3.おわりに

このようにダイヤモンドマチック(株)もトランスミッションの分野で三菱自動車時代から培ってきた種々の技術の蓄積とものづくり文化をもってジヤトコと合併した.今まで別々に育った文化が融合し,洗練され,より高いレベルに発展していくにちがいない.

Many improvements for reducing noise levels have also been attained in cooperation with MHI. These include the development of engineering methods for gears and the construction of flexible and highly efficient NC cell transfer machine lines.

The expansion of AT and CVT unit exports to other automakers in the Asian and ASEAN regions, in addition to supplying them to MMC, has been accomplished with the assistance of Mitsubishi Corporation, which has built a global network and is thoroughly familiar with the market situation in countries around the world.

Japan's unique system of keiretsu corporate groupings is being re-examined today amid international economic changes. At DMC, we also actually separated from the Mitsubishi Group and have become a new member of the JATCO family. In today's open and global context, we hope to achieve further advances, which will require stronger cooperative ties with Mitsubishi-affiliated companies than ever before.

3. Concluding Remarks

To the merger with JATCO, DMC brought its many technologies accumulated in the transmission field from MMC's time and its manufacturing culture. There is no doubt that the two cultures, which have so far been nurtured separately, will advance to even higher levels through a process of fusion and refinement in the coming years.

Author



Yoshi YASUMORI

ダイヤモンドマチック(DMC)のAT, CVT 開発の歴史

History of the Development of Diamondmatic (DMC) ATs and CVTs

平松健男*

森田 敏彦**

大西 豊二***

三浦 美利****

Takeo HIRAMATSU

Toshihiko MORITA

Toyoji OHNISHI

Mitoshi MIURA

抄 録 DMC(旧三菱自動車の駆動系)開発部門では,極めて小人数の開発陣容ではあったが,他社の物真似でない光る技術を積極的に盛り込んだ技術を開発してきた.その歴史を振り返り,特長あるAT,CVTを開発するに至った経緯や,それを支えてきた開発の考え方(戦略)を辿る.

Summary The product development group at Diamondmatic Co., Ltd. (DMC, formerly the drivetrain development group of Mitsubishi Motors Corp. and now merged with JATCO) developed new transmissions that aggressively incorporated splendid technologies unparalleled by those of other companies, despite having a very small staff. This article traces the development history of those distinctive automatic transmissions (ATs) and continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) and the strategic concepts underlying their creation.

1. はじめに

三菱の駆動系の開発陣は,小人数でありながら,次々と新たな要素やユニットを開発し,将来を見据えた特長のある製品を市場に出してきた.

それぞれについて実際の開発現場での実例を挙 げながら、開発の考え方、技術戦略などについて 振り返ってみたい.

2. 黎明期

三菱自動車のAT、CVTは、1955年頃に開発されたスクータ用ゴムベルト式CVTに始まる.乗用車用としては、1964年に発売したコルト1000用のSCAT(Single Coupling Automatic Transmission)完全自動変速機が最初である.これはFR車用手動変速機(MT)をベースに電磁パウダ式自動クラッチと電気モータによるシフトコントロールとを組み合わせた3速オートマチックトランスミッション(AT)であり、現在、ヨーロッパなどで普及しているオート・マニュアルトランスミッション(AMT)そのものであった.しかし、変速中に動力が遮断されること、当時の電子部品の信頼性が充分でないことなどから、約2年あまりで生産を中止し、トルクコンバータ式ATに移行することになった.

1. Introduction

With just a small staff, the drivetrain development group at Mitsubishi Motors Corp. (MMC) developed one new key technology and transmission after another and brought to market distinctive products that were squarely focused on future needs. This article reviews the development philosophy and technological strategies of representative products, citing actual examples from the development process.

2. Beginnings

Mitsubishi ATs and CVTs began with a rubber-belt CVT that was developed around 1955 for use on scooters. The first fully automatic transmission created for passenger cars was the Single Coupling Automatic Transmission (SCAT) featured on the Colt 1000 model that was released in 1964. Built around a manual transmission (MT) for rear-wheel-drive cars, that 3speed AT combined an electromagnetic powder automatic clutch with electric motor-based shift control. It was, in fact, an automated manual transmission (AMT) of the type now widely used in Europe and other markets. However, because power delivery was interrupted during shifting and electronic components at that time were not sufficiently reliable, production was suspended after a little more than two years and a switch was made to ATs with a torque converter.

^{*} 先行開発部 Advance Development Department

^{**} 第二商品開発本部 Product Development Center No. 2

^{***} 岡崎開発事業所
Okazaki Product Development Department

^{****} 第一商品開発本部 Product Development Center No. 1

1960年には,英国ボルグワーナー製FR車用3速ATを購入し,デボネア2Lなどに搭載したが,バンドブレーキを使用していることから,ATの胴回り寸度が大きく,MT用より大きなトンネル形状を持つ車体が必要なこと,3-2コースティングダウンシフトのレスポンスが2秒以上かかること,港湾ストにより納入がしばしば滞ることなどの問題があり,自社開発の気運が高まってきた.

3. 本格的な自社開発AT

そこで,1969年からFR車用3速AT KM150(FR 3 速:Fig.1参照の開発に着手し,1975年に生産化した.

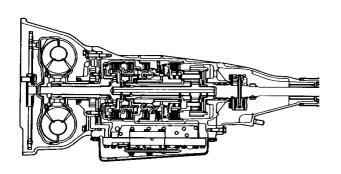


Fig. 1 KM150

MT用の車体に搭載しようとすると,胴回りを細 身にしなければならず,全ての摩擦要素をディス ク式(バンドブレーキを廃止)とし,しかも1速用以 外はワンウェイクラッチ(OWC)を使用しない簡素 な構造を採用した.そのため,2-3変速はOWCやバ ンドブレーキを使わない変速とする必要があり,2 速用ディスクブレーキと3速用クラッチの締結油圧 の間には,一方の油圧が上昇すると他方の油圧が 自動的に減少し,そのオーバーラップ量をスロッ トル開度で可変制御できるタイミングバルブを新 開発した.また,2速用多板ブレーキのピストンに は,ディスクの摩耗を補償するためクリアランス を自動調整する機構を考案し,同時に流量可変バ ルブを新設して,3-2パワーオンダウンシフト時に3 速用クラッチの解放に続く2速用ブレーキの結合タ イミングを車速の増大に伴って遅延させ,全車速 域で良好なシフトクォリティを得ることができた.

このATは,1975年にランサーセレステ1.6L,続いてデボネア2Lに搭載した.

In 1960, a rear-drive 3-speed AT was procured from Borg-Warner of the U.K. and used on the 2.0L Debonair and other models, but various problems with that unit heightened a move to develop ATs in-house. One stemmed from the use of band brakes, which gave the AT a large girth and required a body design with a bigger transmission tunnel than that for MTs. Another was that a 3-2 coasting downshift required a response time longer than two seconds. A further problem was that delivery was frequently delayed due to strikes by longshoremen.

3. Full-fledged Effort to Develop ATs In-house

As a result, an effort was launched in 1969 to develop a rear-drive 3-speed AT and the resulting KM150 (Fig. 1) went into production in 1975.

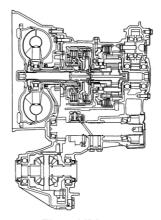


Fig. 2 KM170

This AT featured a simple construction that adopted discs in place of band brakes for all the friction elements and did not use one-way clutches (OWCs) except for first gear. That was done because the girth of the AT had to be slimmed down for use on car bodies designed for MTs.

As a result, 2-3 shifts had to be executed without using OWCs and band brakes. A timing valve was newly developed that allowed variable control, by means of the throttle valve opening, of the overlap between the engagement pressure of the disc plate for second gear and the clutch for third gear. When the hydraulic pressure of one was raised, that of the other was automatically reduced. In addition, for the piston of the multi-plate brake for second gear, a mechanism was devised for automatically adjusting the clearance so as to compensate for disc wear. Simultaneously, a variable flow-rate valve was newly provided, making it possible to obtain excellent shift quality in all vehicle speed ranges. That was accomplished by delaying the engagement timing of the brake for second gear, following the release of the clutch for third gear, according to the increase in vehicle speed in a 3-2 power-on downshift.

This AT was adopted on the 1.6L Lancer Celeste in 1975, followed by use on the 2.0L Debonair.

4. 横置きFF化

1973年の石油危機に端を発した省資源・省燃費の社会的要請に応えるため、小型次期車のFF化構想が持ち上がり、1974年にはミラージュの開発コンセプトが横置きFF方式に決定された。このため、全長短縮を目標の第一に掲げ、扁平トルクコンバータなどを盛りこんで開発したFF車用3速AT、KM170(Fig.2参照)を1979年3月に、ミラージュ1.5Lに搭載して発売した。

その後,ギャラン,ランサー,デボネア,RVRに至るまで,全ての乗用車がこの搭載方式に転向した。

横置きFF化する際、それまで生産していたFR車用エンジンの排気管が運転席側にあり、そのエンジン構造をそのまま踏襲してFF車用に転用したため、助手席側にエンジン、運転席側にトランスミッションというW-E搭載方式を採用することとした。なお、W-Eとは、車両の前方を北(N)とし、西(W)にエンジン、東(E)にATを搭載している搭載方式を表わす。これにより、エンジンとタイヤの回転方向が逆回転の関係という、世界でも例の無いレイアウトを採用することとなり、以下のハンディキャップを背負うことになったが、これらの全てが明確になったのは、残念ながら数年後であった。

・逆転用アイドラギヤの追加.

コスト負担のほか,歯面の両面を使って駆動力を伝達するため,駆動・被駆動ともにギヤ噛み合い音を低減させるような歯型を設計することが難しい.

・エンジンとタイヤの回転方向が逆転

タイヤ駆動反力と空転中のフライホィール駆動反力とではマウント入力が逆方向となる(E-W搭載方式では同方向)ため,3-2キックダウン時などで,マウント入力が正,負,正と変化し,パワープラントが大きく揺れてシフトショックが悪化する.さらに,アイドル振動も車体骨格の振動モードに関係して悪化することも判った.

1988年頃になって,W-E方式に伴う上記のハンディキャップは,克服できない重要アイテムであることが判明したため,1994年から出現する新車は,全てE-W方式搭載に変更するという大きな決断を下したのである.

4. Transverse Front-drive Layout

The idea of a front-drive layout for the next generation of a small passenger car was brought up in response to societal demands for energy conservation and improved fuel economy triggered by the oil crisis in 1973. A transverse front-drive layout was decided as the development concept for the Mirage in 1974. Toward that end, a shorter overall AT length was set as the first objective. The KM170 3-speed AT (Fig. 2) that was developed for use on front-wheel-drive cars incorporated a flatter torque converter and was mounted on the 1.5L Mirage released in March 1979.

Subsequently, all Mitsubishi passenger cars, including the Galant, Lancer, Debonair and RVF, were converted to a front-drive layout.

Switching to a transverse front-drive layout resulted in positioning the exhaust pipe of engines previously produced for rear-wheel-drive cars on the driver's side. Because the engines adapted for front-drive use continued the same construction, the engine was located on the passenger's side and the transmission on the driver's side. This resulted in the adoption of what was called the W-E layout, in which the engine was on the west (W) side and the AT on the east (E) side of the vehicle, with the front being to the north (N). With this mounting arrangement, the engine crankshaft and the tires rotated in opposite directions, creating a layout without precedent anywhere in the world. This layout was burdened with the handicaps described below, but, unfortunately, that did not become completely clear until several years later.

- Addition an idler gear for counter rotational use
 Besides the cost, it was difficult to design a tooth
 profile for reducing the gear meshing noise of both
 the drive and driven gears because both sides of the
 tooth face were used in transmitting power.
- Opposite direction of rotation of engine crankshaft and tires

The reactive force from driving the tires and the reactive force from the idly rotating flywheel applied inputs to the mounts in opposite directions (in the same direction in the case of an E-W layout). Accordingly, the force inputs to the mounts changed from positive to negative to positive during a 3-2 kick-down shift, causing large powerplant vibration that worsened shift shock. Moreover, it was found that idle vibrations also worsened in relation to the vibration mode of the body frame.

Around 1988, it was concluded that these handicaps inherent in the W-E layout were critical items that could not be overcome. Accordingly, a major decision was made to switch entirely to an E-W layout in all new cars beginning from those scheduled for release in 1994.

5. 電子制御化の波に乗って

1979年以降になると,乗用車のFF化展開,ATの多段化や変速機能の向上,小型,軽量,低コスト,低燃費化などの様々なニーズに対応するため,それまでの業界の常識を破り,他社に先駆けた以下のような先進的メカニズムを次々と開発し,展開した.

5.1. 電子·油圧変換器

1973年には,リニア制御式の電子・油圧変換器を使用し,変速用クラッチの油圧を制御して変速フィーリングを改善する特許をいち早く出願した.その後,いくつかの電子・油圧変換器の開発を試みたが,高精度・高レスポンスのデューティ制御式ソレノイドバルブを三菱電機株式会社様と共同開発し,1982年にスリックアップ制御用として初登場させた.開発途上では,ボールバルブがON/OFFする度に,油撃による高圧の振動が発生し,音速で伝播した圧力波が回路端で跳ね返り,その油圧の影響を受けてボールバルブが思うよばらつきによる)という問題を発見し,解決した.その後,世界的に多くの電子制御ATで,このタイプのソレノイドバルブが用いられている.

5.2. スリップロックアップつきトルコン

エンジンのトルク変動によるフライホィールの回転方向振動について,頭の中で四六時中イメージし,それを完全に遮断する方法をいくつか考え出した.その結果,上記の電子・油圧変換器を使用し,トルクコンバータのロックアップクラットを常時微小にスリップさせれば,エンジンのトルク変動を完全に遮断できるという原理に思い至った.これを利用すれば,ごく低速からロックトルクでは、これを利用すれば,ごく低速からロックとが分かり,これを採用したKM171(FF車用3速:Fig.3)が,コルディア,トレディア1.6Lに搭載された.このスリップロックアップ制御を採用したATをELQ(ELectronic Control)と呼び,それ以後の三菱製電子制御ATの象徴的名称となった.

スリップロックアップは,その後20年の間に世界各国のATで徐々に普及し,現在では燃費低減の主要アイテムとなっている.

5. Riding the Wave to Electronic Control

Starting from 1979 on, the following advanced mechanisms were developed and implemented one after another ahead of other companies, overturning what had been common practices in the industry up to that point. That was done to meet a variety of needs, including the trend toward front-wheel-drive passenger cars, the addition of more speed ranges to ATs, the improvement of shift functionality, and demands for smaller, lighter, less expensive and fuel-saving transmissions.

5.1. Electro-hydraulic converter

A patent application was made as early as 1973 concerning a technology for improving the shift feel by applying a linear control type of electro-hydraulic converter to control the hydraulic pressure of the clutches used in shifting. Various attempts were subsequently made to develop electro-hydraulic converters. A high-accuracy, high-response solenoid valve for duty control was developed jointly with Mitsubishi Electric Corp. and was first implemented in 1982 for slip lockup control use. During the development process, it was found that the opening and closing of the ball valve caused a water-hammering effect that produced high-pressure vibrations. Pressure waves propagating at the speed of sound rebounded from the end of the hydraulic circuit, and the influence of that pressure prevented the ball valve from operating as desired, thereby causing the control pressure to fluctuate on account of variation in the speed of sound. Measures were then taken to resolve that problem. Subsequently, many electronically controlled ATs throughout the world came to incorporate this type of solenoid valve.

5.2. Torque converter with slip lockup control

By thinking about the problem day and night, we devised several methods for completely isolating flywheel vibrations induced in its direction of rotation by engine torque fluctuations. As a result, we arrived at a basic principle for fully isolating engine torque fluctuations by allowing the lockup clutch of the torque converter to slip minutely all the time. That was done by using the above-mentioned electro-hydraulic converter for feedback control of the lockup clutch engagement pressure. It was found that applying this principle to lock up the clutch from very low vehicle speeds could improve fuel economy under Japan's 10-15 test mode by approximately 10%. This control principle was incorporated in the front-drive KM171 3-speed AT (Fig. 3) that was adopted on the 1.6L Cordia and Tredia models. The designation ELC (ELectronic Control) was applied to ATs that adopted this slip lockup control, and this term later came to symbolize Mitsubishi's electronically controlled ATs.

In the 20 years since then, slip lockup control has steadily spread to ATs in all countries around the world and is now regarded as a chief means of reducing fuel consumption.

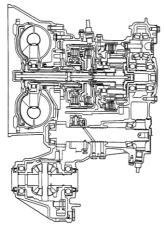


Fig. 3 KM171

5.3.変速用クラッチ締結油圧の電子制御

1973年の特許出願後も,クラッチ油圧の電子制御を目指した電子制御ATの開発を続けた結果,1983年に,スリップロックアップに加えて,僅か23mmの全長増大で4段化を実現した本格的な電子制御4速AT,KM175(FF車4速:Fig.4参照)を,ギャランシグマ2Lに搭載して発売した.

三菱のAT開発の歴史はそれ程古いとは言えないが、特筆するべきは、上記のようにマイコンの出現以前から電子制御関連要素の開発に着手し、マイコンの発展に合わせて、タイミングよく新機構、新製品を開発・出現させることができたことであった。

新たに開発したスリップロックアップや変速用クラッチの供給油圧を直接電子制御する本格的な電子制御ATは,他社に先駆けた画期的なATであったが,オートマチックトランスミッションフルード(ATF)の耐久劣化,エンジン出力の増大に対する強度余裕の不足などによる品質問題を矢継ぎ早に出した.その一つ一つに打ちのめされながらも,我々は「七転び八起き」の精神で,それを次への新たな挑戦へのエネルギとして活かしてきた.

6. 軽用ATの展開

1981年には,乗用車と同様,軽自動車のイージドライブ指向に対応して,採算性を考慮した廉価版の半自動式MR40(FR2速)を開発し,ミニカ0.36Lに搭載した.

続いて,1984年にはFF化(E-W搭載方式)するとともに,完全自動化したMR60(FF2速)を開発し, さらに1987年には,MR80(FF3速)を開発してミニカ0.55Lに搭載した.

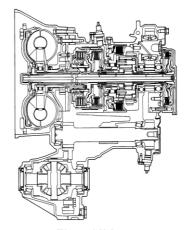


Fig. 4 KM175

5.3. Electronic control of clutch engagement pressure for shifting

Development work on an electronically controlled AT, aimed at electronic control of clutch pressures, continued following the patent application in 1973. As a result, the front-drive KM175 4-speed AT (Fig. 4) was adopted on the 2.0L Galant Sigma released in 1983. In addition to slip lockup control, this AT provided full-fledged electronic control and achieved four speed ranges with just a 23-mm increase in its overall length.

Although the history of AT development at Mitsubishi does not go back so far, one notable point is that efforts to develop elements associated with electronic control, as mentioned above, were initiated even before microcontrollers appeared. Furthermore, new mechanisms and products were developed and brought to market in a timely manner in line with the subsequent progress of microcontrollers.

The full-fledged electronically controlled ATs, which incorporated the newly developed slip lockup control and direct electronic control of the supply pressure of the clutches used for shifting, were revolutionary units that led other companies' products. However, those ATs experienced various quality problems in rapid succession due to degradation of automatic transmission fluid (ATF) durability and an insufficient margin of strength to cope with increases in engine output, among other factors. Though we were soundly frustrated by every one of those problems, we used them as springboards for undertaking the next challenges in a spirit of being undaunted by setbacks.

6. Extension of ATs to Minicars

In 1981, the rear-drive MR40 2-speed semi-automatic was developed and adopted on the 0.36L Minica minicar. That low-cost version, which took into account commercial feasibility, was in response to a preference for ease of driving in minicars, just as in ordinary passenger cars.

This unit was then adapted to an E-W front-wheel-drive layout in 1984, followed by the development of the front-drive MR60 2-speed fully automatic. In addition, the front-drive MR80 3-speed AT was developed in 1987 and adopted on the 0.55L Minica.

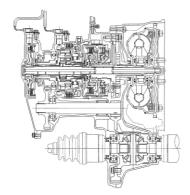


Fig. 5 F4A1

また,1993年には低燃費ニーズに対応して,軽用としては初めてのスリップロックアップ付き電子制御式4ATであるF4A1(FF4速:Fig.5参照)を開発し,ミニカ0.66Lに搭載した.

そして,1998年には,上記F4A1と極力部品を共 用化したR4A1(FR4速)を,パジェロミニ0.66Lに搭 載した.

7.4WD用コンポーネントへの進出

1983年頃から、4WD用コンポーネントにも目をむけた・ビスカスカップリングユニット(VCU)の出現以前から、二軸間の回転速度差の増大に対応して、伝達トルクが増加するようなカップリング(継手)があれば、駆動系のトルク配分制御に新たな価値を産み出すことができると考えていた・

特に、そのカップリングを前・後輪直結の4WDのプロペラ軸に介入装着すれば、駆動力差に基づく前・後輪の回転速度差に感応して駆動力(トルク)が移動し、大きな駆動力が伝達されている方のタイヤが空転する前(ゴムの変形により、車速が同じでもタイヤの回転速度が増大)に、もう一方のタイヤにも駆動力が伝達され、コンパクトで実用的な4WDシステムが完成する筈との思いが強かった。

あるとき,オイルポンプのケース側を回転要素として使えば,入力軸側との間で,トルク伝達できるのではと閃いた.非圧縮流体であるオイルの吐出ポートを閉鎖し,その吐出オイルを小さなオリフィスを介して吸入側に戻せば,まさに今必要としているカップリングがコンパクト,低コストで実現するに違いないと確信したのである.

具体的には,高圧・高流量に有利なベーンポンプが適すると判断し,何度か試作し,トルク変動やトルク容量の点を改良した上で,光洋精工株式会社様に持ち込み,1988年にハイドローリックカップリングユニット(HCU: Fig.6)という名称で,ミニキャブ,ミニカに搭載した.

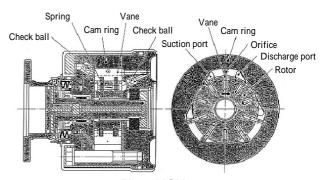


Fig. 6 HCU

In response to needs for a further reduction of fuel consumption, the front-drive FA41 4-speed AT (Fig. 5) was then developed in 1993 and fitted on the 0.66L Minica. The FA41 was the first electronically controlled 4-speed AT with slip lockup control for use on minicars.

That was followed in 1998 by the development of the rear-drive R4A1 4-speed AT. The RA41 shares as many parts as possible with the F4A1 and is featured on the 0.66L Pajero Mini.

7. Advance into 4WD Components

Attention was also paid to 4WD components from around 1983. Even before the viscous coupling unit (VCU) appeared, we reasoned that new value could be imparted to torque split control in drivetrain systems by applying a coupling that would allow the transmitted torque to be increased in proportion to an increase in the rotational speed difference between the two axles.

We thought that it would be particularly significant to install such a coupling in the propeller shaft of a 4WD system that directly linked the front and rear axles. That would allow torque to be apportioned in response to rotational speed differences between the front and rear wheels based on differences in their driving force. In short, before the tires transmitting large torque began to slip (i.e., before deformation of the rubber caused the rotational speed of the tires to increase even though the vehicle speed remained the same), torque could also be transferred to the other tires. We had strong expectations that this would lead to the completion of a compact and practical 4WD system.

It suddenly occurred to us one day that if the case side of the oil pump was used as a rotating element, torque could be transmitted between there and the input shaft. We were convinced that a compact, low-cost coupling, which was truly needed at that point, could surely be achieved by closing the discharge port of the incompressible fluid and returning the discharged fluid through a small orifice to the suction side.

Specifically, we decided that a vane pump would be suitable because of its advantages in providing high pressure and a high flow rate. After building a number prototypes and improving them with respect to torque fluctuation and torque capacity, we approached Koyo Seiko Co., Ltd. about developing a production unit. In 1988, the resulting unit, dubbed the Hydraulic Coupling Unit (HCU, Fig. 6), was adopted on the Minicab and Minica.

残念ながら,HCU発売以前にフォルクスワーゲンの1ボックス4WD車のプロペラ軸にVCUが搭載されたが,我々と同様な考え方をしていたこと,しかもシリコンオイルのせん断力のみで動力を伝達するということに対し,ヨーロッパ勢もなかなかやるものと驚きもし,尊敬の念すら抱いたことを思い出す.

1989年にはFF車用ATとしては,国内最大容量の3L用F4A3(FF4速)を新開発(基本構造はそれまでの4速ATと同じ)するとともに,4WDニーズに対応して,VCU付きセンターデフを装着したフルタイム4WD用の4速AT,W4A3(FFベース4WD用:Fig.7)を開発した.

Regrettably, before the HCU reached the market, Volkswagen rolled out a one-box 4WD car with a VCU incorporated in the propeller shaft. Their concept was the same as ours. Moreover, we were surprised at and also had respect for their approach of using only the shear force of a silicone oil to transmit power, which indicated that European manufacturers were also working on grand concepts.

In 1989, we developed the new F4A3 4-speed AT for use on 3.0L front-wheel-drive cars. This unit had the same basic structure as previous 4-speed ATs, but it featured the largest capacity of any front-drive domestic AT. Moreover, to meet 4WD needs, we also developed the W4A3 4-speed AT (Fig. 7), which was based on a front-drive 4WD layout, but was equipped with a center differential incorporating a VCU to provide full-time 4WD capability.

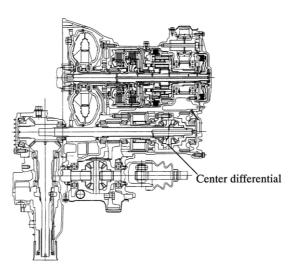


Fig. 7 W4A3

この4WDシステムは,第二軸部にセンターデフを装着した簡素な構造であり,W-E方式のメリットを最大限に活用したものであった.なお,1988年以降はAT/MTの型式呼称を変更し,FF/FRの別,2WD/4WDの別,前進段数などが判別可能となるような呼称を導入している.

8. ワンウェイクラッチレス多段AT

1983年に,変速中のクラッチ供給油圧を直接電子制御する4ATを出現させた後,実変速時間の学習制御と変速中の入力軸回転速度の変化率を目標値とするフィードバック制御とを導入しないと,電子制御とは言えないということに気づき,2年ほどで開発完了し,導入した.

This 4WD system featured a simple structure with a center differential provided in the second shaft and it took maximum advantage of the merits of the W-E layout. Beginning in 1988, we changed the model names of our ATs and MTs and adopted a designation system that distinguished between front- and rear-wheel drive and between 2WD and 4WD, and also indicated the number of forward speed ranges, among other details.

8. Stepped ATs without One-way Clutches

The 4-speed AT that we brought out in 1983 featured direct electronic control of the clutch supply pressure during shifting. We subsequently realized, though, that it could hardly be called electronic control without having adaptive learning control of the actual shift time and feedback control using the rate of change in the rotational speed of the input shaft during shifting as the target value. Those control features were developed and implemented in about two years.

折りしも,クライスラー社とのエンジン,ATの技術交流が活発になり,電子制御の長所を極限まで引き出すには,構造の簡素化(軽量,低コスト,多段化に寄与)とシフトスケジュールの適正化とが最大のポイントであるとの考え方で,この両面の技術開発を積極的に進めることとした.

特に、将来の多段化に備えて、ワンウェイクラッチレスATが両社の最大の関心事であったこともあり、両社がそのためのパワートレーン構造、油圧回路構成、ソレノイドバルブ構造、電子制御手法などを考案し、持ち寄った.それぞれが相手の案も参考にしながら、ワンウェイクラッチレスATを開発することとなった.従って、個々の要素は必ずしも同一ではないが、類似コンセプトの4ATを独自に開発し、クライスラー社は1989年に、A604(FF4速:Ultra-drive)としてそれを先行実現させ、世界初のワンウェイクラッチレス4ATとしてSAEの技術賞を獲得するなど華々しい成果を挙げた.

三菱も,同時期の出現を目指していたが,車両の開発タイミングと合わず,一旦開発を断念した.その後,前述のようにE-W搭載方式への変更を決断したときに合わせて,一旦開発を断念したワンウェイクラッチレスATを復活させ,軽量・コンパクトで卓越したシフトクォリティと高度なイージドライブをコンセプトとする新世代ATを開発することとした.

ワンウェイクラッチレスとするため,各変速段の切り換え用クラッチ(またはブレーキ)には,それぞれ独立して油圧制御することが可能なよう,個別にソレノイドバルブを装着し,変速時には解放側クラッチの微少スリップを先行させておき,結合側クラッチの結合力の増大に連れて自動的に解放側クラッチの結合力が減少するような制御手法を採用した.

2速以上の変速では,全く問題なかったが,1-2変速における変速開始前の駆動トルクの減少(ブレーキ感)と停止間際の2-1変速での小さなショックとには,最後まで悩まされ,量産開始後に,1速用にワンウェイクラッチを追加せざるを得なかったことは痛恨の極みであった.

1速と2速とのギヤ比の差が大きかったこと,停止間際の,小さな石ころを踏んだようなショックが許容できないことが,ワンウェイクラッチ追加の直接の理由であったが,応答性の良いソレノイドバルブの開発を怠っていたことが真の理由であったように思う.

At about that time, there were lively engineering exchanges with Chrysler Corp. about engines and ATs. Simplification of the AT structure, which would contribute to a lighter weight, lower cost and the addition of more speed ranges, and optimization of the shift schedule were thought to be the most important factors in eliciting the maximum benefits of electronic control. It was decided to pursue vigorous R&D efforts with regard to both aspects.

The elimination of one-way clutches in particular was one issue of greatest interest to both companies in preparing to add more speed ranges to ATs in the future. Toward that end, both companies contributed new ideas regarding the powertrain structure, hydraulic circuit configuration, solenoid valve structure, electronic control methods and other aspects. It was decided each company would also refer to the other's ideas in developing an AT without one-way clutches. Accordingly, each one independently developed a new 4-speed AT based on a similar concept, though the basic elements were not necessarily the same. Chrysler achieved its concept first in 1989 in the form of the front-drive A604 4-speed "Ultradrive" AT. It was a brilliant accomplishment that won an SAE engineering prize for being the world's first 4-speed AT without oneway clutches.

Mitsubishi had also aimed to complete its transmission in the same time frame, but the development project was temporarily abandoned because of a mismatch with the timing for the development of the vehicle. This project to develop an AT without one-way clutches was subsequently revived in conjunction with the decision mentioned earlier to switch to the E-W layout. It was decided to develop a next-generation AT around the concept of a lightweight, compact unit with outstanding shift quality and a high level of driving ease.

To achieve an AT without one-way clutches, each of the clutches (or brakes) used in shifting between speed ranges was provided with a solenoid valve to allow independent control of its pressure. When a shift was executed, the control method that was adopted allowed the disengaging clutch to slip minutely first, and its engaging force was automatically reduced as that of the engaging clutch was increased.

Shifts above the second speed range were no problem at all. However, until the very end we were troubled by a reduction of drive torque (producing a feeling of braking) just before the onset of a 1-2 upshift and slight shift shock in a 2-1 downshift when the vehicle was stationary. It was extremely regrettable that a one-way clutch for first gear had to be added soon after the unit went into mass production.

The direct reasons for the addition of the one-way clutch were the large difference in gear ratios between first and second gears and the fact that shift shock resembling the feeling of running over a small stone was not acceptable while the vehicle was stationary. The real reason, though, would appear to be that we had been remiss in developing a solenoid valve with good responsiveness.

ワンウェイクラッチレスATについては,うまく制御できればワンウェイクラッチ変速より,優れたシフトフィーリングを低コストで確保できること,6AT,8ATなどの多段化には必須の技術であり,将来のAT技術の動向から考えて,どうしても克服していかなければならない技術である.

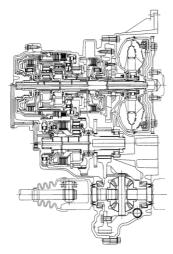


Fig. 8 F5A5

1994年には、上記のコンセプトに加えて、道路条件や運転条件のパターン認識に最適なニューラルネットワークを導入したINVECS - IIシフトスケジュール制御を開発し、イージドライブ性を画期的に向上したスポーツモード付きF4A4(FF4速)を、ギャランFTO 2Lに搭載した、

さらに,1995年には,F4A4をベースに第2軸部に 2段変速要素(減速/直結)を配置して5速化した F5A5(FF5速:Fig.8参照)を,ディアマンテ3Lに搭載した.

続いて,1997年にはこれらの部品を共用してFR 化し,4WD用トランスファーの装着を可能とした V5A5(FR5速:Fig.9参照)を,パジェロ3.5Lなどに 搭載した.

このように,ATを新世代化するに当たっては, 新機構・新制御の盛り込みのほか,4速/5速,FF/FR (FFと極力部品を共用),小型/大型,2WD/4WDの 組み合わせを,ほぼ同時開発する必要があり,車 体部門,生産部門とを巻き込んだ極めて大掛かり な開発となった.

また,この外にFF車用MT(大型/小型),パジェロ用新4WDシステム(スーパーセレクト4WD)や,ギャランVR-IV用の左右駆動力移動4WDシステム(AYC:アクティブ・ヨーコントロール)なども同時に開発するという大変な負荷が駆動系開発部門にかかった。

Elimination of one-way clutches is a technical hurdle that must be overcome by all means when one considers the future trends of AT technologies. So long as effective control can be accomplished, it would provide a superior shift feel at lower cost compared with shifting by means of one-way clutches. It is also a necessary technology for the development of ATs with additional speed ranges, such as 6-speed and 8-speed units.

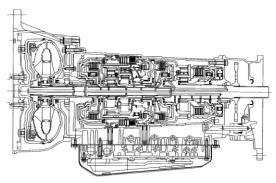


Fig. 9 V5A5

In addition to the foregoing AT concept, the INVECS-II shift schedule control was developed in 1994, which implemented a neural network optimally suited for pattern recognition of the road conditions and driving conditions. INVECS-II was incorporated in the front-drive F4A4 4-speed AT with a sports shift mode. The F4A4 was adopted on the 2.0L Galant FTO to provide a dramatic improvement in driving ease.

Moreover, in 1995, the front-drive F5A5 5-speed AT was introduced on the 3.0L Diamante. Based on the F4A4, the F5A5 had the second gear shift elements (reduction/direct engagement) positioned on the second shaft to achieve five speeds.

That was followed in 1997 by the development of the rear-drive V5A5 5-speed AT (Fig. 9), which was adopted on the 3.5L Pajero, among other models. The V5A5 shared parts with the above-mentioned units and was provided with a transfer case for 4WD capability.

In creating new generations of ATs, it was necessary, as described here, to develop combinations of 4- and 5-speed units, front- and rear-drive units (with the maximum possible sharing of parts between the two), large and small capacity units and 2WD and 4WD units nearly simultaneously, in addition to adopting the latest mechanisms and controls. That required exceptionally large-scale development projects, which involved the body development group and production engineering group as well.

Moreover, other products that were also being developed simultaneously with ATs included large and small capacity MTs for front-wheel-drive cars, the new Super Select 4WD system for the Pajero and the Active Yaw Control (AYC) 4WD system with right and left wheel torque split control for the Galant VR-IV. All of those projects placed a tremendous load on the drivetrain development group.

睡眠時間を極限まで切り詰める異常事態が数年続いたように思うが、盛り込むべき新技術は全て盛り込み、最初に立ち上がった4ATを搭載したギャランFTOがカーオブザイヤーを獲得したときには、心の底から感無量であったことを思い出す.

9. INVECS AT

三菱では、電子制御のメリットを最大限発揮するには、それまでの平坦路中心のシフトスケジュールから、山岳路や屈曲路でも快適なシフトスケジュールとなるような新たなコンセプトを持つシフトスケジュールの開発が必要であるとの認識のもと、1985年頃からINVECS(Intelligent & Innovated Vehicle Electronic Control System)に代表される知能的なATの開発を進めた。

その結果,前述のように,1992年にはファジィ制御変速技術を導入し,道路状況を判別して,主として山岳路で低速段のホールド性を向上させたINVECSを,他社に先駆けてF4A2,F4A3に採用することができた.

道路状況や運転状態を,限られたセンサ出力で 推定するため,ファジィ制御やニューラルネット ワークというような新たな制御理論を導入したが, 開発グループは,常時このような新しい制御理論 や手法にも積極的に挑戦してきたように思う. 「論理や手法が難しかろうと易しかろうと,必要で あれば,その中に分け入り,それを自分のものに して利用する」という考え方を貫く風土があった からこそ,このようなことができたのであろう.

ニューラルネットワークを使用し,道路条件のみならず,ドライバの癖までをも把握して,それに対応するシフトスケジュールに移行していくINVECS-II,手動で変速段を選択できるスポーツモード,各種のエンジンや摩擦材のばらつきなどを包み込み,それに合わせて良好なシフトフィーリングを確保するマッチングフリー制御,無交換が可能なATF,etc.

新世代ATの新機軸はどれ一つをとっても,並みの開発ではない難しい開発であったが,全員が一つの目標を定め,無我夢中で闘って勝ち得た成果であったように思う.

An abnormal situation where we cut our sleeping time to the bare minimum seemed to continue for several years, but the new technologies that needed to be implemented were all incorporated in the units developed during that period. We were overcome with immeasurable emotion when the Galant FTO, fitted with the first 4-speed AT to be launched, won the Japanese Car of the Year award in 1994-95.

9. INVECS ATS

From around 1985, we were proceeding at Mitsubishi with the development of intelligent ATs, typified by the Intelligent & Innovative Vehicle Electronic Control System (INVECS). That was based on the recognition that a shift schedule incorporating a new concept had to be developed in order to elicit the maximum benefits of electronic control. Up to that point, the shift schedule had mainly been designed for driving on level roads, but a shift schedule was needed that would provide driving comfort on mountainous and winding roads as well.

As a result, a shift strategy incorporating fuzzy control was introduced in 1992, and INVECS was adopted for the F4A2 and F4A3 ATs to provide intelligent capabilities ahead of other companies. INVECS improved the transmission's ability to hold a low-speed range, particularly on mountainous roads, by judging the road conditions.

New control theories such as fuzzy control and a neural network were implemented to estimate the road and driving conditions based on a limited number of sensor outputs. The drivetrain development group always seemed to be vigorously striving to achieve such new control theories and methods. Such efforts were possible precisely because of the following philosophy that permeated the group's culture. "If something is needed, we will involve ourselves in that field, acquire the theory or method, regardless of whether it is difficult or easy, and put it to use."

That was true for INVECS-II, which uses a neural network to detect not only the road conditions but also the driver's driving habits and adjusts the shift schedule accordingly, a sports shift mode that facilitates manual gear selection, a freely matching control that provides an excellent shift feel by tuning the shift schedule to accommodate differences between different types of engines and friction materials, a fill-for-life ATF and other developments.

All of the new innovations incorporated in these nextgeneration ATs represented extraordinary developments that were difficult to accomplish. Yet, they were successfully attained as a result of the selfless struggles by all members of the group to achieve our common goals.

10.無段変速機の投入

1985年から先行開発に着手し、ベルトについては、当初、コスト・入手性の面から、ボルグワーナー製を本命に開発したが、噛み合い振動によるチェーン音の課題を解決することが困難であることが判り、92年にはVDT製ベルトに変更し、開発をやり直すこととした。

発進装置としては、電磁パウダ式クラッチ式、フルードカップリング式、トルクコンバータ式などの各種発進装置の長所・短所を比較した結果、耐久性(熱容量大)、燃費、スムーズさの面で勝るトルクコンバータ式を採用した。

CVTに対する市場動向,評価も勘案しながら, 2000年にF1C1(FF CVT: Fig.10参照)をランサーセ ディア1.8L に搭載して市場投入した.

このCVTは,直噴エンジンのGDIと融合させ,卓越した低燃費,ドライバビリティを実現するとともに,INVECS-III制御により,加速時の車速増大に対するエンジン回転速度の上昇度合いを制御するなど,従来のCVTでは得られなかったフィーリングを実現し,イージドライブ性を向上させている.

また、新たに展開した八木工場に最新鋭の設備を導入したこともあり、開発の初期段階から開発部門と生産技術部門とが密接に連携してコンカレントな開発に取り組んだ結果、コスト、品質などの完成度の高NCVTとすることができた。

DMCユニットの変遷史を表1に記載する.

10. Introduction of CVTs

Advance engineering work on a CVT was initiated in 1985. Initially, we thought that a Borg-Werner product was the most likely candidate for the belt because of cost and availability considerations. However, it was concluded that the issue of chain noise due to meshing vibration would be difficult to resolve, so it was decided in 1992 to switch to a belt made by Van Doorne's Transmissie (VDT), and the development work was begun all over again.

A comparison was made of the relative strengths and weaknesses of an electromagnetic powder clutch, a fluid coupling, a torque converter and other devices for use as the start-off element. Based on the results, a torque converter was adopted because of its superiority with respect to durability (large heat capacity), fuel economy and smoothness.

After carefully considering market trends and evaluations concerning CVTs, the front-drive F1C1 CVT (Fig. 10) was adopted on the 1.8L Lancer Cedia that was rolled out in 2000. When teamed with a direct gasoline injection (GDI) engine, this CVT provides outstanding fuel economy and driveability. Thanks to INVECS-III, it also controls the rate of increase in engine speed relative to the increase in vehicle speed during acceleration to provide an acceleration feel previously unobtainable with other CVTs, along with improved driving ease.

This CVT also attained a high degree of perfection with respect to cost, quality and other aspects as a result of the concurrent development efforts undertaken in close cooperation with the product development group and production engineering group from the initial stage of development. Another contributing factor was the installation of state-of-the-art facilities at the Yagi Plant that was newly prepared specifically for CVT production.

The history of DMC transmissions is outlined in Table 1.

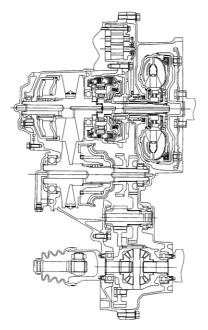


Fig. 10 F1C1

Table 1 History of DMC Transmissions

O: Start of production ♦: Model used on ▲: End of production

	rear	5		20 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	3	8						-	-	-
- 1	Old model name	New model												
-	SCAT	99 000117100												
×	KM150		CELESTE DEBONAIR			1								
	MR40			MINICA	1									
ZWD		R4A11									PAJE	PAJERO MINI	minicab	
		R4A12										minicab	TOWN BOX WIDE	: WIDE
		V4A11									PAJE	PAJERO MINI	minicab	
4WD		V4A12									PAJE	PAJERO MINI minicab	inicab TOWN BOX WIDE	X WIDE
		V4A51									A Os	PAJERO CHALLENGER SPACE GEAR PAJE	IGER STR	STRADA
		V5A51									- PAR -	PAJERO CHALLENGER	GER	
X	KM170	F3A21	MIRAGE	GE CORDIA, TREDIA	TREDIA								- PAJERO	
 	KM171	←		CORDIA, TREDIA	TREDIA				1					
<u> </u>	KM172	F3A22		CORDIA, TI	CORDIA, TREDIA 2 TAXI								1	
2WD	KM175	F4A22			GALANT E	GALANT	LY .							
<u> </u>	KM176	F4A21		GAL	GALANT 2 MIRA	MIRAGE GAI	GALANT				1			
	KM177	F4A23			DEBONAIRV	AIR V MAGNA	NE							
		F4A33				DE	DEBONAIR GTO	g 5	\	ALANT, EI	GALANT, ETERNA, EMERAUD	CAUD .	1	

O: Start of production ♦: Model used on A: End of production -GALANT, LEGNUM 98 99 00 01 02 EK CEDIA MINICA toppo BI MIRAGE DINGO MINICA toppo BJ MINICA toppo BJ MINICA DIAMANTE (AUS) GALANT (USA) MINICA 26 96 GALANT FTO DIAMANTE 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 LANCER, MIRAGE, LIBERO GALANT, LIBERO RVR, CHARIOT CHARIOT GALANT FTO MINICA MINICA, MINICA ECONO MINICA GALANT 84 81 82 83 75 76 77 78 79 80 64 W4A32 W4A33 F1C1A W3A11 W4A11 F3A12 F4A12 F4A42 F5A42 F3A11 F5A51 F4A11 F4A41 F4A51 MR80 Old model name MR60 4WD 2WD Type Ŧ FF

AIRTREK TURBO ♦: Model used on ▲: End of production 98 99 00 01 02 CHARIOT GRANDIS MINICA toppo BJ MINICA toppo BJ Coppo BJ WIDE GALANT, LEGNUM DIAMANTE LEGNUM, CHARIOT GRANDIS, RVR GED C MIRAGE, LANCER MIRAGE DINGO GALANT, LEGNUM GALANT, LEGNUM 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 O: Start of production 49 W4A12 W4A42 W5A42 W1C1A W4A41 W5A51 New model name Old model name 4WD Type Ŧ

-47-

11.開発の考え方(まとめ)

30年以上に渡る三菱の駆動系開発の歴史を振り返り、その根底に連綿と流れる開発の考え方をまとめてみた。

- ・基礎学問の向上 基礎学問を生涯学ぶエネルギを持ち,難解な理 論も必要に応じて躊躇なく使う
- ・追い越し技術に徹する 他人の後追いでなく,原点に溯って発想し,他 を30%は凌駕する技術を開発する
- ・道草を食わない 20年後の姿を思い浮かべ,そこに到達するべき 技術を優先的に開発する
- ・人材の育成 課題を持ち,その解決のためには,自らが学び, 挑戦的に解決していく課題解決型人材を育成
- ・そのものになり切る 完成状態をイメージすれば未踏のものが,また 不具合品の身になればその原因が見えてくる
- ・真理をあくまでも探究 いい加減な解析では,真理が見えない,真理に 近づくことは本質技術への近道であり,喜びで ある
- ・七転び八起き 失敗や敗北を糧とし,失敗して地にまみれても, ただでは起きないしぶとさ
- ・次元解析的な発想 軸の捩じり強度や歯車強度は径の3乗,トルコン のトルク容量/熱容量は5乗/3乗,電磁粉クラッチ のトルク容量/熱容量は3乗/2乗,ならばトルク容 量増大に対する注目点は...
- ・敵を愛し,尊敬できるゆとり 開発とは,切り拓くこと(我こそはの想い)と, 謙虚に学ぶこと(敵を愛する)との両立である
- ・周辺技術・ユーザーに学ぶ どのような車,ATを造るのか,周辺技術を知り, ユーザーの不満を知って要素を開発

11. Summary of Drivetrain Development Philosophy

This article has reviewed the development history of Mitsubishi drivetrain units over a period of more than 30 years. The philosophy that has continuously formed the foundation of this development work is summarized below.

- Improvement of fundamental disciplines
 Possess the energy for life-long study of fundamental disciplines and do not hesitate to employ difficult theories whenever necessary.
- Devotion to trail-blazing technologies
 Instead of following others, go back to the basics, devise original ideas and develop technologies that surpass those of others by 30%.
- Don't loiter along the way Imagine the situation 20 years from now and give priority to developing technologies for arriving at that destination.
- Nurturing of human resources
 Nurture personnel capable of solving problems by being able to identify issues, pursue self-initiated study toward their resolution and undertake the challenge of resolving them.
- Projecting oneself into certain situations
 Imagine the state when something is completed and the path leading there will become clear, or imagine that one is a defective product and the causes will become evident.
- Pursuit of the truth to the end Half-baked analysis will not reveal the truth. Knowing the truth is a short-cut to essential technology and a source of joy.
- Be undaunted by setbacks
 Learn from mistakes and defeats. Have the tenacity not to
 get up empty-handed when knocked down and muddled
 by defeat.
- Dimensional analysis-like thinking
 The torsional strength of a shaft and gear strength are equal to the third power of their diameter; the torque capacity/thermal capacity of a torque converter is equal to the fifth power/third power; the torque capacity/thermal capacity of an electromagnetic powder clutch is equal to the third power/second power; if that is true, the key focal point for increasing torque capacity is
- Love one's enemies and have a margin of respect
 Development work is a combination of opening up a path
 (the very idea of oneself) and learning humility (loving
 one's enemies).
- Learn peripheral technologies and from users
 Learn peripheral technologies, know the dissatisfactions
 of users and develop elements suitable to the type of car
 or AT to be built.

12.おわりに

三菱での駆動系開発の経過を辿ってみると,良き先輩と優秀で粘り強い同僚や後輩に恵まれ,他社を凌駕する新製品の開発を次々に実現することができたように思う.先ずもって,これらの諸氏に心から感謝申し上げる.

また,本文には触れていないが,生産部門の多くの方々,関連会社の多くの方々から,挑戦的な開発への理解と多大な援助・励ましがあった.心から感謝申し上げる.

12. Concluding remarks

In tracing the history of drivetrain development at Mitsubishi, it is clear that we were blessed with excellent senior employees, outstanding and tenacious colleagues and good younger employees. They all made it possible for us to develop one new product after another that eclipsed those of other companies. We would first like to thank all of them from the bottom of our hearts.

Additionally, although not touched on here, we also received tremendous understanding, support and encouragement concerning our development challenges from many individuals in the production group and in related companies. We would also like to express our heartfelt appreciation to them.

Authors



Takeo HIRAMATSU



Toshihiko MORITA



Toyoji OHNISHI



Mitoshi MIURA

クラッチtoクラッチ変速制御

Clutch-to-Clutch Shift Control

日杵 克俊* 矢野 裕三** 濱野 正宏* 古市 曜一**
Katsutoshi USUKI Yuzo YANO Masahiro HAMANO Yoichi FURUICHI

抄 録 ダイヤモンドマチック(株)は「クラッチtoクラッチ変速」をAT小型・軽量・低コスト、および更なる多段化への基本技術と位置づけ、実用化してきた. 良好なシフトクォリティを確保するには、各クラッチのトルク容量を独立してきめ細かく電子制御する必要があり、これらの制御技術について紹介する.

Summary Diamondmatic Co., Ltd. (now merged with JATCO) positioned and implemented clutch-to-clutch shifting as a key technology for reducing the size, weight and cost of automatic transmissions (ATs) and for facilitating the addition of more speed ranges. In order to assure good shift quality in clutch-to-clutch shifting, it is necessary to control electronically the torque capacity of each clutch minutely and independently. This article describes the control technologies involved.

1.はじめに

ダイヤモンドマチック(株)は「クラッチtoクラッチ変速」を実用化し,新世代ATとして1994年10月に市場に投入した.

従来,良好なシフトクォリティを確保するにはワンウェイクラッチを活用するのが最良とされ,4速までのATでは高度な変速技術を必要とするクラッチtoクラッチ変速を避けてきた向きもあったが,当社は本変速制御がさらなる多段化を実現するための基本技術としても極めて重要であるとの認識に立って,クラッチtoクラッチ変速制御技術の開発に取り組んできた.本稿では,その制御方法の概要を紹介する.

2. 電子油圧制御システム

クラッチtoクラッチ変速においては,解放側と結合側クラッチの作動タイミングとトルク容量を関連づけて高精度で制御する必要がある.このため,新世代ATではクラッチ毎に電子油圧変換用デューティ制御ソレノイドバルブを設け,各クラッチのトルク容量を独立に制御できる油圧制御システム(Fig.1)を採用している.

電子油圧制御としては、三方ソレノイドバルブの出力圧で調圧作動するパイロットバルブを用いる手法(Fig. 2)を採用し、デューティ制御ソレノイドバルブで直接クラッチピストン室の油圧を制御する場合に発生する油圧脈動を抑制し、ソレノイドバルブの消費電流やソレノイド駆動回路の発熱量を低減している。

1. Introduction

In October 1994, Diamondmatic rolled out a new-generation 4-speed AT that implemented clutch-to-clutch shifting. Previously, the use of one-way clutches was regarded as the best way to secure good shift quality, and there was a tendency to avoid clutch-to-clutch shifting in ATs with up to four speed ranges because of the advanced shift control technology that was required. However, Diamondmatic undertook the challenge of developing clutch-to-clutch shift control technology, recognizing that this shift control method was critically important as a key technology for enabling more speed ranges to be added to ATs.

This article outlines the control method for clutch-toclutch shifting.

2. Electro-hydraulic Control System

In clutch-to-clutch shifting, the operational timing and torque capacity of the disengaging and engaging clutches have to be correlated and controlled with high accuracy. To accomplish that, the new-generation AT adopted a hydraulic control system (Fig. 1) capable of controlling the torque capacity of each clutch independently. That was achieved by providing a duty-control solenoid valve for electric signal-hydraulic pressure conversion for each clutch in the AT.

The method adopted for electro-hydraulic control incorporates a pilot valve that regulates the clutch piston pressure using the output pressure of a three-way solenoid valve (Fig. 2). This approach inhibits the hydraulic pressure pulsations that are produced when the pressure in the clutch piston chamber is controlled directly by the duty-control solenoid valve. It thus reduces the current consumption of the solenoid valve and the amount of heat generated by the solenoid valve drive circuit.

^{*} 第二商品開発本部
Product Development Center No.2

^{**} 第二実験部 Experiment Department No.2

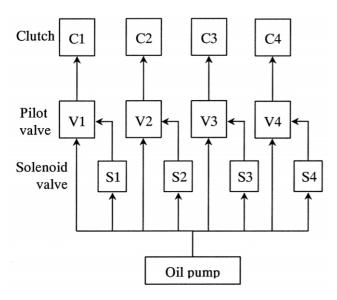


Fig. 1 Concept of hydraulic control system

3. 変速制御方法

パワーオン状態でのアップおよびダウンシフト の基本制御方法について説明する.

3.1. パワーオンアップシフト制御 3.1.1.トルクフェーズ

Fig. 3に4速ATの2-3シフトの実測データを示す. 先ず,結合側クラッチピストンのがたを最短時間で詰めるため,クラッチピストンのがた量に応じた所定の時間,ソレノイドのデューティ率を100%(供給油量最大)とする.その後,解放側ソレノイドのデューティ率を0%とし,解放側クラッチの油圧低下勾配(トルク容量の低下勾配)に対応して結合側クラッチの油圧上昇勾配を与えるデューティ率を結合側ソレノイドバルブに出力する.

解放側クラッチに対しては,結合側クラッチが結合を開始する時点でトルク容量がエンジンからATへの入力トルク相当になるように油圧の解放タイミングを設定する.もし,解放タイミングが早すぎた場合は,AT入力軸回転数(以下入力回転数とする)が変速前のインギヤ回転数より上昇する(いわゆるエンジンの吹き上がりが発生する)ので,クラッチの微小スリップを検出したら,瞬時に解放側クラッチ油圧を再上昇させて吹き上がりを抑制している.

3.1.2.イナーシャフェーズ

入力回転数がインギヤ回転数から低下し始めたことで実変速の開始を検出すると,入力回転数変化率があらかじめ設定された目標値に一致するように,結合側クラッチ制御用ソレノイドのデューティ率をリアルタイムにフィードバック制御する.

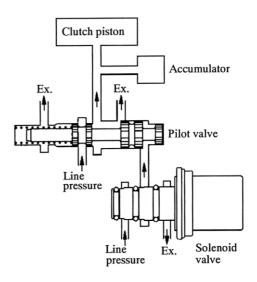


Fig. 2 Hydraulic circuit for clutch pressure control

3. Shift Control Method

This section explains the basic control method for upshifts and downshifts under a power-on condition.

3.1. Power-on upshift control

3.1.1. Torque phase

Figure 3 shows the actual measured data for a 2-3 upshift of the new 4-speed AT.

The duty ratio of the solenoid for the engaging clutch is first set to 100% (maximum fluid supply) for a certain interval of time corresponding to the amount of play in the clutch piston so as to take up the play in the shortest time possible. The duty ratio of the solenoid for the disengaging clutch is then set to 0%, and the duty ratio that applies the slope of the pressure increase of the engaging clutch relative to the slope of the pressure decrease (i.e., slope of torque capacity decrease) of the disengaging clutch is output to the solenoid valve on the engaging side.

The pressure release timing of the disengaging clutch is set so that the torque capacity corresponds to the torque input from the engine to the AT at the time the engaging clutch begins to engage. If the release timing is too early, the rotational speed of the AT input shaft will increase above the in-gear rotational speed before the transmission shifts, giving rise to what is commonly called engine flare-up. Accordingly, the moment minute slipping of the clutch is detected, the pressure of the disengaging clutch is instantaneously increased again to inhibit engine flare-up.

3.1.2. Inertia phase

The onset of an actual shift is detected when the input shaft rotational speed begins to fall below the in-gear rotational speed. The duty ratio of the solenoid for controlling the engaging clutch is feedback-controlled in real time so that the rate of change in the input shaft rotational speed coincides with a predetermined target value.

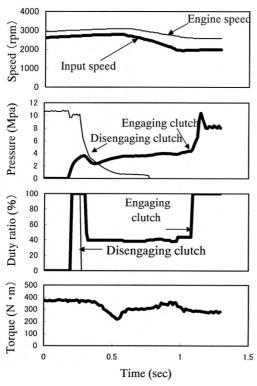


Fig. 3 Power-on 2-3 shift (actual data of 4-speed AT)

目標インギヤ回転数への同期を検出するとデューティ率を100%(ライン圧相当)に立ち上げて変速制御を完了する.

なお,本フェーズ中はエンジントルクの低減制御も併用して,トルク変動の抑制とシフトレスポンスの向上とを両立させている.

3.2. パワーオンダウンシフト制御 3.2.1.解放側クラッチ

Fig. 4に4速ATの4-2シフトの実測データを示す. 変速判断と同時に,先ず解放側ソレノイドのデューティ率を0%とし,油圧を最大流量で解放する. クラッチの滑り始めを検出したら,入力回転数変化率があらかじめ設定された目標値と一致するように,リアルタイムに解放側デューティ率をフィードバック制御する.

入力回転数が変速後のインギヤ回転数を越えたら,入力回転数がインギヤ回転数をわずかに上まわる状態を維持するように目標入力回転数変化率を切り替える.

その後,結合側クラッチの結合開始を判定したら,解放側クラッチの油圧を速やかに解放する.

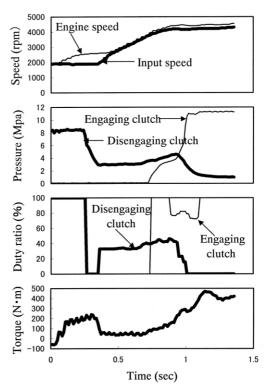


Fig. 4 Power-on 4-2 shift (actual data of 4-speed AT)

When synchronization with the target in-gear rotational speed is detected, the duty ratio is raised to 100% (equal to the line pressure) to complete the shift control operation.

It should be noted that reduction of the engine torque is also controlled in the inertia phase to inhibit torque fluctuations and improve shift response at the same time.

3.2. Power-on downshift control

3.2.1. Disengaging clutch

The actual measured data for a 4-2 downshift of the new 4-speed AT are given in Fig. 4.

Simultaneous with a downshift judgment, the duty ratio of the solenoid for the disengaging clutch is first set to 0% so as to release the pressure at the maximum flow rate. The duty ratio of the solenoid for the disengaging clutch is feedback-controlled so that, if incipient clutch slipping is detected, the rate of change in the input shaft rotational speed can be made to coincide with a predetermined target value.

If the input shaft rotational speed exceeds the in-gear rotational speed to be attained following the shift, the rate of change in the target input shaft rotational speed is switched so as to maintain a state where the input shaft speed stays just slightly above the in-gear rotational speed.

Subsequently, upon detecting the onset of engagement by the engaging clutch, the pressure of the disengaging clutch is quickly released.

3.2.2.結合側クラッチ

最短時間でクラッチピストンのがたを詰めるため,クラッチピストンのがた量に応じた所定の時間,ソレノイドバルブのデューティ率を100%(供給油量最大)とする.

この油圧供給開始タイミングは,入力回転数が変速後のインギヤ回転数に到達するまでに要する時間をリアルタイムに予測しながら決定する.

がた詰め終了後,解放側クラッチの油圧低下に応じた油圧上昇を与えるデューティ率を出力し,クラッチを掴み換え,最終的にデューティ率を100%(ライン圧相当)に立ち上げて変速制御を完了する.

4. 変速制御パラメータの学習

トランスミッションの生産ばらつきや経時変化によるシフトクォリティの悪化を回避するため,変速制御パラメータの学習機能を大幅に取り込んでいる.ここでは,主な学習方法について説明する.

4.1.クラッチピストンのがた詰め時間の学習

シフト時に常に正確なタイミングで解放側クラッチとの掴み換えをするため,結合側クラッチピストンのがた詰め時間(すなわち,ストローク量)を学習している.

ソレノイドバルブのデューティ率に対するクラッチピストンのがた詰めストローク速度の関係をあらかじめテーブル化しておく、がた詰め制御の開始からクラッチの結合開始を判定(入力回転数の変化で判定)するまでの間,制御周期毎に出力したデューティ率に対するストローク速度を上記テーブルから読み取り,それらを積算した結果を今回のピストンがた詰め量とする。この値と前回までの変速で学習されたがた詰め量との比較により学習値を更新し,各シフトでのクラッチピストンのがた詰め制御時間を油温毎に算出している。

この学習制御により、ピストン位置を常時監視することができるので、レスポンスを縮めるとともにクラッチの結合初期から適正な油圧を供給することができる.したがって、本制御は、クラッチピストンのクッションスプリングの廃止を可能にするとともに、変速中の後戻り変速や飛び越し変速にも威力を発揮する基本技術である.

4.2.アップシフトの解放側クラッチ解放時間の学習トルクフェーズにおける結合側クラッチとの掴み換えタイミングを正確かつ安定なものとするため,結合側クラッチのがた詰め時間の学習に加え,解放側クラッチの油圧解放時間を学習している.

解放側クラッチの解放開始から,スリップ開始(クラッチの受け持ちトルク容量がAT入力トルク相当となった直後の状態)までの時間を検出し,前回までの変速で学習された解放時間との比較により学習値を更新していく.

3.2.2. Engaging clutch

The duty ratio of the solenoid for the engaging clutch is set to 100% (maximum fluid supply) for a certain interval of time corresponding to the amount of play in the clutch piston so as to take up the play in the shortest time possible. The timing for the onset of this pressure supply is determined by predicting in real time the amount of time needed for the input shaft rotational speed to reach the in-gear rotational speed following the downshift.

Once the play is taken up, a duty ratio is output that applies a pressure increase corresponding to the pressure decrease at the disengaging clutch. After switching the clutch that is engaged, the duty ratio is finally raised to 100% (equivalent to the line pressure) to complete the shift control operation.

4. Learning of Shift Control Parameters

Functions for learning the shift control parameters were extensively adopted in the new-generation 4-speed AT to avoid deterioration of shift quality due to transmission variation at the time of production and changes occurring with use. This section explains the principal learning functions adopted.

4.1. Learning of time needed to take up dutch piston play

The time needed for taking up the play in the piston of the engaging clutch (i.e., amount of piston travel) is learned so that the switch in engagement with the disengaging clutch can always be executed with precision timing when the transmission shifts.

A table is created in advance for the relationship between the duty ratio of the solenoid valve and the clutch piston travel speed for taking up the play. During the interval from the onset of control to take up the clutch piston play until the onset of clutch engagement is detected (judged on the basis of the change in the input shaft rotational speed), the piston travel speed relative to the duty ratio output in each control cycle is read from this table. The result obtained by integrating the speed values is regarded as the amount of piston play to be taken up this time. The learned value is updated by comparing this value with the amount of play learned in shifts through the previous one. The control time needed to take up the clutch piston play in each shift is calculated for each fluid temperature.

Because this learning control allows the piston position to be monitored constantly, it shortens shift response time and enables a suitable pressure level to be supplied from the initial phase of engagement. Accordingly, this control procedure has made it possible to discontinue the cushion spring of the clutch piston. It is also a key technology that displays its effectiveness in facilitating change-of-mind shifting (i.e., after initially accelerating, thereby inducing a downshift, the driver decides to decelerate instead, thus returning the AT to the original speed range) and the jumping of speed ranges in the process of executing a shift.

4.3.変速開始油圧の学習

変速中のフィードバック制御によるデューティ率の修正量を最小とし、入力回転数変化率を目標とする変化率に一致させて変速時間と出力トルク波形を安定化させるため、実変速の開始直後に出力する油圧(デューティ率)、すなわち、アップシフトでは結合側、ダウンシフトでは解放側のクラッチ制御用ソレノイドのデューティ率を学習している.

実変速開始直後(回転数関係の変化開始)の入力回転数変化率とあらかじめ設定した目標値との比較により学習値を更新していく.

この目標値はフィードバック制御の目標値と関連 づけて設定している.

4.4. コーストダウンおよびガレージシフトにおける学習 コーストダウンシフトやガレージシフトにおいて も , それぞれピストンのがた詰め量や変速開始油圧 の学習を採用して , シフトクォリティを安定化して いる .

これらのシフトは通常アクセル全閉領域で実行され,特に油温やエンジン回転数の変化がクラッチへの供給油量,供給圧に及ぼす影響が大きくなるため,油温とエンジン回転数に応じて学習することでそれらの影響を排除している.

5. おわりに

小型・軽量・低コストを狙い,多段化への基本技術として開発したクラッチtoクラッチ変速制御は,その狙い通りに最近の5,6速ATを限られた車両スペースに搭載可能とするための必須技術として定着しつつある.今後もより上質のシフトクォリティの実現を目指して,変速制御技術の開発・改良に努めていく所存である.

Authors



Katsutoshi USUKI



Yuzo YANO



Masahiro HAMANO



Yoichi FURUICHI

4.2. Learning of the release interval of disengaging clutch during upshifts

Besides learning the time needed for taking up the piston play of the engaging clutch, the pressure release interval of the disengaging clutch is also learned. That is done to make sure the timing for the switch in engagement with the engaging clutch in the torque phase is reliable and stable.

The time from the start of disengagement by the disengaging clutch to the onset of slipping (i.e., the state after the torque capacity assigned to the clutch becomes equal to the AT input torque) is detected; the learned value is updated by comparing the detected time with the pressure release interval learned in shifts through the previous one.

4.3. Learning of pressure at onset of shifting

The pressure (i.e., duty ratio) output just after the onset of an actual shift is learned. For upshifts, this is the duty ratio of the solenoid for controlling the engaging clutch; for downshifts, it is the duty ratio of the solenoid for controlling the disengaging clutch. This is done to minimize the amount of correction made to the duty ratio based on feedback control during shifting and to make the rate of change in the input shaft rotational speed coincide with the target rate of change so as to stabilize the shift time and output torque waveform.

The learned pressure value is updated by comparing the rate of change in the input shaft rotational speed following the onset of an actual shift (onset of change related to the rotational speed) with a predetermined target value. This target value is determined in relation to the target value for feedback control.

4.4. Learning during coast down and garage shift situations

The amount of piston play to be taken up and the pressure at the onset of shifts are also learned in coast down and garage shift situations, respectively, for the purpose of stabilizing shift feel. These shifts are usually executed in the region of a fully closed throttle valve, where the fluid temperature and engine speed have an especially large effect on the amount of fluid and pressure supplied to the clutches. Accordingly, by learning the amount of piston play and onset pressure in relation to the fluid temperature and engine speed, the influence of these factors can be eliminated in these shift situations.

5. Conclusion

Clutch-to-clutch shift control was developed as a key technology for reducing the size, weight and cost of ATs and facilitating the addition of more speed ranges. In keeping with these aims, it has taken root as an indispensable technology for enabling recent 5- and 6-speed ATs to be mounted in the limited space available on vehicles. Continued efforts will be made in the coming years to develop and improve shift control technologies in order to enhance shift quality further.

ATの最適変速段制御とCVTの最適変速比制御

Optimum AT Shift Pattern Control and Optimum CVT Ratio Pattern Control

谷村 中*

五家 仁**

Ataru TANIMURA

Hitoshi GOKA

抄 録 自動変速機(以下AT)の変速段および無段変速機(以下CVT)の変速比は,主に平坦路走行でのドライバビリティなどを考慮して設定さているので,登降坂路などでは不適切な場合が多い.

本稿では、全ての走行条件下でドライバの意に添った違和感のない変速を目指したATの変速段制御とCVTの変速比制御について紹介する.

Summary The shift pattern of automatic transmissions (ATs) and the ratio pattern of continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) are generally determined in consideration of drivability on flat roads, often making them unsuitable when traveling uphill or downhill. This article describes optimum control methods for the AT shift pattern and CVT ratio pattern, which are designed to provide natural shift performance matching the driver's wishes under all sorts of driving conditions.

1.はじめに

一般に、ATの変速段はFig. 1に示すように車速と エンジンのスロットル開度をパラメータとしたシ フトパターンを基に制御される.このシフトパターンを基に制御される.このシフトパターンは固定型であり、主に平坦路でのドライバ登 リティなどを考慮して設定されているため、登 坂路などでしばしば不都合なではコーナ手前をとなるこのを ある.例えば、登坂路においてはコーナチフトを りたり、コーナ出口では駆動力不足によりダウンとになり、スムーズな走行が疎外される.一方、降坂路においては、高速段のまま走行することによる ので、エンジンブレーキが効かず頻繁にフットブレーキによる減速を強いられる.

また,CVTの変速比はFig.2に示すとおり,ATと同様に車速とエンジンスロットル開度をパラメータとしたレシオパターンを基に制御されるため,ATと同じ問題が生じる.

そこで,あらゆる走行条件下でもドライバの意に添った変速段あるいは変速比に制御することを目指し,ATの最適変速段制御とCVTの最適変速比制御を開発,採用した.

特にCVTでは,無段・連続に変速比を制御できる特長を活かし,ATの有段変速に起因した課題も解決した.

本報では,ATとCVTのこれら制御の概要について述べる.

Experiment Department No.2

1. Introduction

The speed range of an AT is generally controlled on the basis of a shift pattern that has the vehicle speed and throttle valve opening as its parameters, as shown in Fig. 1. The shift pattern is fixed and is mainly designed in consideration of drivability on flat roads, which often makes it unsuitable when driving uphill or downhill. For instance, whenever the driver lets up on the accelerator pedal while going into a curve on an uphill road, the transmission upshifts unnecessarily, and when coming out of the curve, the driver has to depress the accelerator pedal deeply owing to a lack of sufficient driving force until the transmission downshifts. This shift behavior degrades smooth driving performance. On the other hand, because the transmission stays in the high speed range when traveling downhill, engine braking is not effective, forcing the driver to decelerate by pressing the brake pedal frequently.

The same problems also occur with CVTs because their speed ratio is controlled according to a pattern that likewise has the vehicle speed and throttle valve opening as its parameters, as shown in Fig. 2.

Accordingly, we have developed and implemented optimum control methods for the AT shift pattern and CVT ratio pattern that are designed to control the speed range or the speed ratio to match the driver's wishes under all sorts of driving conditions. By taking advantage of the characteristic of CVTs that they are capable of controlling the speed ratio seamlessly and continuously, the problems stemming from the stepped ratios of conventional ATs have also been resolved.

This article outlines the optimum control methods applied to ATs and CVTs.

第一商品開発本部

Product Development Center No.1

^{**} 第二実験部

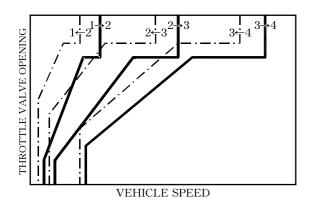


Fig. 1 Conventional AT Shift Pattern

2.ATの最適変速段制御

2.1.制御内容

2.1.1.制御概要

Fig. 3に本制御のブロック図を示す.

走行条件に応じて降坂路モードと登坂・平坦路 モードを切換え、それぞれドライバの意に添った 変速段となるよう、降坂路モードではニューラル ネットワーク、ファジィ制御、学習制御を、登 坂・平坦路モードではシフトパターンの連続可変 制御を導入している。

2.1.2.降坂路モード

降坂路でのダウンシフトの必要性は,道路勾配や車速など種々の要因によって決まるため,ドライバの変速意志を数式で表すことは 困難である.

そこで,ドライバの変速意志を表す変数(エンジンブレーキの適合度と呼ぶ)を各種入力情報からニューラルネットワークにより演算し(Fig. 4),その変数をファジィ制御に入力してダウンシフトを決定する方式とした.

ニューラルネットワークの出力特性は各結合の強さによって決まるが,その結合強さはベテランドライバの変速意志を忠実に再現できるよう,その実走行データを基にオフボード学習させて求めた.

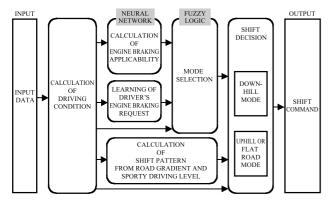


Fig. 3 Block Diagram of AT Shift Schedule control

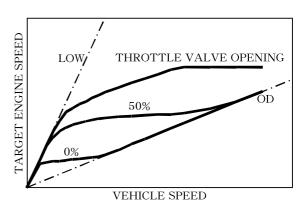


Fig. 2 Conventional CVT Ratio Pattern

2. Optimum AT Shift Pattern Control

2.1. Control method

2.1.1. Overview

A block diagram of the control method is shown in Fig. 3. Depending on the driving conditions, this control method switches the AT between a downhill mode and an uphill or flat road mode to provide the speed range that matches the wishes of individual drivers. The downhill mode incorporates a neural network, fuzzy logic and learning control, while the uphill or flat road mode features continuously variable control of the shift pattern.

2.1.2. Downhill mode

The need to downshift when traveling downhill is determined by various factors such as the road gradient and vehicle speed, making it difficult to express the driver's intention to shift in a mathematical equation. Therefore, engine braking applicability is calculated by the neural network on the basis of various information inputs as a variable expressing the driver's intention to shift (Fig. 4). That variable is then fed into the fuzzy logic block to determine the necessity of downshifting.

The output characteristics of the neural network are determined on the basis of the strength of various connections. The strength of the connections was found with an off-board learning procedure based on actual driving data so as to faithfully reproduce a veteran driver's intention to shift.

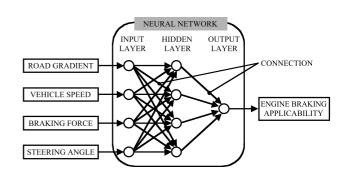


Fig. 4 Calculation of Engine Braking Applicability

また、ベテランドライバのダウンシフトタイミングを正確に再現できても、ドライバによって個人差があり、そのタイミングが必ずしも最適とは限らないため、ドライバのスロットル操作とフットブレーキ操作からエンジンブレーキに対する不満を判定して、ドライバの好む側へ作動条件を補正する学習制御を追加した.

Fig. 5に示すように,ドライバがエンジンブレーキを必要としていない時にダウンシフトした場合,アクセルペダルを踏み込むことになる.その場合,作動条件を作動しにくい側へ微少量補正する.逆に必要としている時にダウンシフトしない場合,フットブレーキにより頻繁に減速する.その場合,作動条件を作動しやすい側へ微少量補正する.

これら微少量の補正はドライバーの不満がなくなるまで繰り返され,作動条件はドライバーの好みに収束する.

Even though the veteran driver's downshift timing is faithfully reproduced, it is not necessarily the optimum timing for all drivers because of individual differences. Therefore, a learning control procedure was also added that judges a driver's dissatisfaction with engine braking based on the person's operation of the accelerator pedal and brake pedal and corrects the operating conditions in the direction preferred by that individual.

As illustrated in Fig. 5, a driver will depress the accelerator pedal if the transmission downshifts when the person thinks that engine braking is unnecessary. In this case, the operating conditions are minutely corrected toward the side where the transmission is less likely to shift. Conversely, if the transmission does not downshift when the driver thinks engine braking is necessary, the person will depress the brake pedal frequently to decelerate the vehicle. In this case as well, the operating conditions are minutely corrected toward the side where the transmission is more likely to shift.

These minute corrections are repeated until the driver's dissatisfaction disappears so as to converge the operating conditions to the individual's preferences.

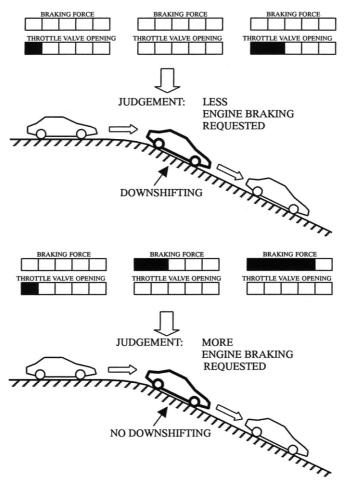


Fig. 5 Engine Braking Judgment

2.1.3.登坂・平坦路モード

通常のシフトパターンでは,コーナ進入などで一時的にアクセルペダルを戻すとアップシフトするため,スロットル再踏込み時に駆動力が不足する場合がある.

そこで,スロットル再踏込み時の駆動力確保を目的とし,シフトパターン連続可変制御を採用した(Fig. 6).

シフト線は、登坂に必要な駆動力とドライバの 運転の仕方に応じ必要な駆動力余裕を確保する量 だけ移動させることとした。

運転の仕方は、Fig. 7に示すようなスポーティ度と呼ぶ変数で判定する.スポーティ度は,エンジン負荷度またはタイヤ負荷度の大きい方の値をフィルタリングすることによって平均的に見た車両負荷度を計算し,最後に変速パターンの移動量が適度となるように補正して求める.エンジン負荷度は,加速に使えるエンジントルクの利用度合で表し,タイヤ負荷度は,タイヤの限界摩擦力に対する負荷の度合で表す.

2.2.制御の効果

2.2.1.降坂路モード

Fig. 8は,ある降坂路をマニュアルシフトにより最適な変速段を選択しながら走行した場合と,同じ条件を自動変速させながら走行した場合の変速段が一致した時間的な割合を比較したものであり,本制御により,ドライバの意志に精度よくマッチする変速段制御が実現できた.

UPSHIFT PATTERN (3→4) CRUISING AND MODERATE DRIVING DOWNSHIFT PATTERN (4→3) MODERATE DRIVING VEHICLE SPEED VEHICLE SPEED VEHICLE SPEED

Fig. 6 Continuously Variable AT Shift Pattern

2.1.3. Uphill or flat road mode

With an ordinary shift pattern, the transmission upshifts when the driver momentarily lets up on the accelerator pedal such as when entering a curve. As a result, there are times when there is insufficient driving force at the moment the driver depresses the accelerator pedal again.

Therefore, a continuously variable AT shift pattern was adopted with the aim of securing sufficient driving force when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal again (Fig. 6).

The shift lines move only so far as to secure the necessary reserve of driving force corresponding to the power required for climbing hills and satisfying the driver's style of driving.

The style of driving is judged on the basis of a variable called the sporty driving level, as shown in Fig. 7. The sporty driving level is found by calculating the average vehicle load level as a result of filtering whichever is larger, either the engine load level or the tire load level. The filtered result is then corrected so that the amount of change in the shift pattern is finally suitable. The engine load level is expressed as the proportion of the engine torque that is available for acceleration. The tire load level is expressed as the load ratio relative to the critical friction force of the tires.

2.2. Control benefits

2.2.1. Downhill mode

A certain downhill course was driven by manually shifting to the optimum speed range and by letting the automatic transmission shift naturally under the same driving conditions. Figure 8 compares the percentage of time the new shift schedule and a conventional shift schedule agreed with the manually selected speed range. The results show that the new shift schedule controlled the speed range selection so as to match the driver's wishes accurately.

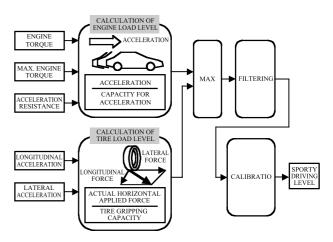


Fig. 6 Continuously Variable AT Shift Pattern

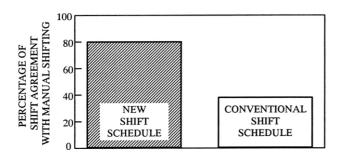
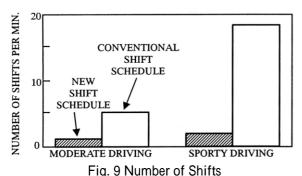


Fig. 8 Percentage of Shift Agreement with Manual Shifting



3

2.2.2.登坂・平坦路モード

Fig. 9は,ある登坂路を,Dレンジのみでマイルド運転とスポーツ運転の両方の運転方法で走行したときの変速回数を示している.ともに本制御の効果が有効に発揮され,ホールド性が高く,変速頻度が減少している.

3.CVTの最適変速比制御

3.1.制御内容

3.1.1.制御概要

Fig. 10に本制御のブロック図を示す.

ATと同様,走行条件に応じて降坂路モードと登坂・平坦路モードとを切換えている.降坂路モードでは目標加速度制御と学習制御を,登坂・平坦路モードではレシオパターンの連続可変制御を導入し,ドライバの意に添った変速比を実現している.

3.1.2.降坂路モード

無段変速のCVTでは、最適なエンジンブレーキを作用させることが可能であり、Fig. 11のとおり道路勾配と車速に応じて、適度なエンジンブレーキが作用するよう目標加速度を設定し、その目標加速度が得られるダウンシフト量を 演算する方式とした.

この方式では、きめ細かくダウンシフト量を 演算しても、エンジン特性などのバラツキにより エンジンブレーキカに差が生じる可能性があるため、降坂路での定常走行中にバラツキを学習補正 する制御を採用した.

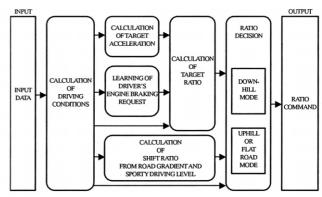


Fig. 10 Block Diagram of CVT Ratio Schedule Control

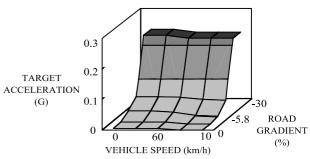


Fig. 11 Target Acceleration in Downhill Driving

2.2.2. Uphill or flat road mode

Figure 9 compares the number of times the transmission shifted under the conventional and new shift schedules when climbing a hill with the shifter kept in the D range only. The results are shown for both moderate and sporty driving styles. The new shift schedule displayed its effectiveness under both driving styles, holding the speed range well so that the transmission shifted fewer times.

3. Optimum CVT Ratio Pattern Control

3.1. Control method

3.1.1. Overview

A block diagram of the control method is shown in Fig. 10. Similar to the AT shift pattern control, the CVT control method switches between a downhill mode and an uphill or flat road mode depending on the driving conditions. To provide CVT ratios matching the driver's wishes, the downhill mode incorporates target acceleration control and learning control, and the uphill or flat road mode adopts continuously variable control of the ratio pattern.

3.1.2. Downhill mode

Because a CVT varies the ratio continuously, it allows optimum use of engine braking. As shown in Fig. 11, a target acceleration level is set in relation to the road gradient and the vehicle speed so as to obtain suitable engine braking. The control system then calculates the amount of downshifting needed to obtain the target acceleration.

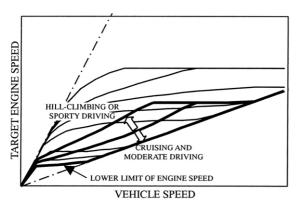


Fig. 12 Continuously Variable CVT Ratio Pattern

また,ドライバにはエンジンブレーキ力の好みに対する個人差があるため,ATの制御と同様,ドライバの好みを学習する制御を追加した.

3.1.3.登坂・平坦路モード

ATと同様,必要な駆動力を確保するため,CVTではFig. 12のとおり目標エンジン回転の下限を設定し,連続可変する制御とした.

また、ATと同様、登坂に必要な駆動力やドライバの運転の仕方に応じた駆動力余裕が確保されるよう、目標エンジン回転の下限をスポーティ度に応じて変えるようにした。

3.2.制御の効果

3.2.1.降坂路モード

Fig. 13は,ある降坂路を走行した場合の全走行時間に対し,ブレーキを踏んでいた時間を示したもので,本制御によりブレーキ使用頻度が減少したことが分かる.

また,CVTでは制御 作動時に徐々にダウンシフトさせているためショックが全くなく,しかも過不足のないエンジンブレーキ力となるため,ATに対して更に違和感のないフィーリングを実現できた.

3.2.2.登坂・平坦路モード

Fig. 14は,あるコーナ出口での加速時の走行パターンを時系列的に比較したものである.

通常のレシオパターンによる走行では,コーナ手前でのアクセルペダル戻しにより変速比がODとなり,コーナ出口でアクセルペダルを再踏込みしても変速比がLOW側に移行するまでの駆動力不足が生じる.本制御では,コーナ中も変速比をLOW側に保持するためスムーズな再加速が実現できている.

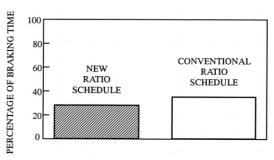


Fig. 13 Percentage of Braking Time

Even though the amount of downshifting is minutely calculated with this control method, engine braking power could differ at times because of variation in engine characteristics or other factors. Therefore, a control procedure was adopted that learns and compensates for such variation during steady-state downhill driving.

Additionally, because individual drivers have different preferences with regard to engine braking power, a control procedure was added that learns such personal preferences, similar to the AT control method.

3.1.3. Uphill or flat road mode

Like the AT shift pattern control, the CVT control method sets a lower engine speed limit and continuously varies the ratio pattern to provide the necessary driving force, as shown in Fig. 12.

In addition, the lower engine speed limit is varied according to the sporty driving level so as to secure an ample reserve of driving force corresponding to what is required for climbing hills and satisfying the driver's style of driving, similar to the AT control method.

3.2. Control benefits

3.2.1. Downhill mode

Figure 13 shows the percentage of braking time relative to the total driving time when traveling on a certain downhill course. It is clear that the new CVT ratio schedule reduced the frequency of braking compared with the conventional ratio schedule.

In addition, because a CVT downshifts gradually during ratio control, shift shock does not occur, and engine braking power is neither excessive nor insufficient. Consequently, the new CVT ratio pattern control method achieves an even more natural shift feel compared with an AT.

3.2.2. Uphill or flat road mode

Figure 14 compares time histories of driving patterns when accelerating while coming out of a curve. With the conventional ratio pattern, the transmission ratio shifts to Overdrive when the driver lets up on the accelerator pedal upon entering the curve. Accordingly, even though the driver again depresses the accelerator pedal, there is a lack of sufficient driving force when coming out of the curve until the transmission shifts to the Low ratio side. The new ratio schedule holds the ratio on the Low side even while cornering so that the vehicle can accelerate smoothly again coming out of the curve.

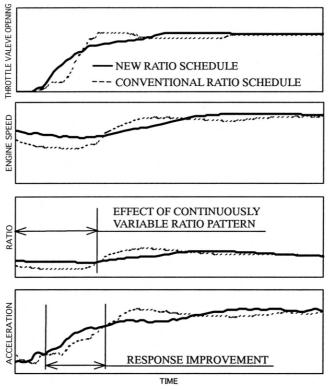


Fig. 14 Driving Pattern at Exit of Curve

4.おわりに

AT, CVTともに, 降坂路のエンジンブレーキ力確保, および平坦・登坂路での駆動力確保を目的とした制御を導入することで, イージードライブ機能を進化させることができた.

今後,さらに精度よくドライバの意を反映できる変速制御の実現に向けて改良していきたい.

4. Conclusion

The optimum AT and CVT control methods described here are designed to provide suitable engine braking power in downhill driving and ample driving force when traveling on flat or uphill roads. As a result, these control methods achieve a further improvement in driving ease.

Further efforts will be made in future work to develop improved shift control methods that reflect the driver's wishes even more accurately.

Authors



Ataru TANIMURA



Hitoshi GOKA

1050℃高温浸炭の実用化

Practical Application of 1050-C High-temperature Carburizing

藤原 克哉^{*} Katsuya FUJIWARA

抄 録 高深度浸炭が要求されるCVT用プーリの浸炭 処理時間を短縮するため,従来の浸炭温度(910~ 950)より高い1050 での高温浸炭に取り組んだ.

炉の耐久性,炉内雰囲気制御,処理ワークの結晶粒粗大化の問題から,過去に1050 における連続浸炭の例は見られない.今回,これらの課題を解決し,実用化した内容と経緯を紹介する.

Summary We have been working on high-temperature carburizing at 1050°C, higher than the usual carburizing temperature of 910°-950°C, with the aim of shortening the carburizing time for CVT pulleys, which require an extremely deep case depth. Previously, there were no precedents for continuous carburizing at 1050°C because of such issues as furnace durability, furnace atmosphere control and coarsening of materials. This article describes how we resolved these issues and implemented a high-temperature carburizing process.

1. はじめに

CVTは変速ショックのないスムーズな加減速と 燃費が良いなどの特長を持っているが,構造上従 来のATにはない高精度と耐久性が要求される金属 ベルトとプーリを必要とする.

今回,プーリの製造工程で採用した種々の新技術のうち,高温浸炭についてその技術の一端を紹介する.

2. プーリの要求品質と対応

ベルト式CVTは,油圧で作動する駆動側と従動側に配置されたプーリにより金属ベルトを挟み込み,動力を伝える機構からなる(Fig. 1).

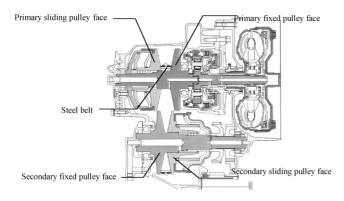


Fig. 1 CVT sectional view

* 技術統括部 Production Engineering Management Department

1. Introduction

Continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) feature smooth acceleration/deceleration without any shift shock and excellent fuel economy, among other benefits. Because of their construction, however, they require a steel belt and pulleys, components that demand high precision and durability and are not found in conventional automatic transmissions (ATs).

This article gives a general description of the hightemperature carburizing technology that is among the various new techniques incorporated in the manufacturing process for CVT pulleys.

2. Required Pulley Quality and Carburizing Process

Power transmission in a steel-belt CVT is accomplished by squeezing the metal belt between sliding pulley faces actuated by hydraulic pressure on the drive side and fixed pulley faces on the driven side (Fig. 1). As the steel belt is driven around the pulleys, it constantly slips on the pulley surfaces, albeit minutely, in the process of transmitting friction force under high contact pressure. The pulleys thus require high pitting resistance and wear resistance. Consequently, the case hardening depth of the pulleys must more than twice that of ordinary carburized gears. Carburizing is a type of surface-hardening treatment whereby carbon (C) is introduced and diffused into steel. Because the carburizing time is proportional to the square of the depth of carbon penetration, the process time must be increased fourfold to obtain a case depth that is twice as deep.

ベルト駆動時に,高面圧下で摩擦伝動中の金属ベルトはプーリの面上を僅かではあるが常時滑っており,プーリは高い耐ピッチング性能と耐摩耗性が要求される.このため,プーリの硬化層深さは,通常の浸炭歯車部品の2倍以上を必要とする.浸炭とは,鋼の表面より炭素(C)を浸透,拡散させる処理であるが,処理時間は炭素の浸透深さの二乗に比例するため,2倍の硬化層深さを得るには4倍の処理時間が必要である.

この処理時間の短縮には,浸炭温度を上げ,炭素の拡散速度を速めることが古くから知られている.しかし,一部のバッチ式真空浸炭炉にこの実用例があるものの,連続式浸炭炉では多くの課題があり,問題点から実用化された例はない.

3. 高温浸炭の効果及び課題

3.1. 高温浸炭の効果

高温浸炭の目的は処理時間の短縮であり,計画 段階では,次の目標を掲げた.

浸炭処理時間の短縮

100分 480分 (通常浸炭)

また,それに伴う効果は次の四つである.

- (1)投資削減(浸炭炉の設置数削減)
- (2)設置スペース削減
- (3)省エネルギー
- (4)仕掛かり低減

特に投資と設置スペースの削減効果は大きく,投資については,通常浸炭炉5基に対し高温浸炭炉1基に,設置スペースについても1/5に縮小可能となる.

3.2. 高温浸炭の課題と取り組み

高温浸炭の課題は,次の四つに分類される.

- (1)処理品の結晶粒の粗大化防止
- (2)炉内CO2濃度の分析精度向上
- (3)処理品の熱処理変形
- (4)浸炭炉の耐久性

3.2.1. 処理品の結晶粒の粗大化防止

結晶粒が粗大化(Fig. 2)すると,処理品の疲労・ピッチング強度が低下する.現有材では980 以上で3~4時間の浸炭処理により結晶粒が粗大化する.粗大化防止の一つの方法として,処理品を焼入れ前にA1変態点以下に一旦冷却しておき,再び焼入れ温度まで加熱して焼入れする二次焼入れが一般的である.しかしながら,この方法は再加熱によるエネルギーロスが大きく,処理品の温度コントロールも困難である.

It has long been known that the carburizing time can be shortened by raising the process temperature so as to quicken the rate of carbon diffusion. However, although there are examples of some batch vacuum carburizing furnaces that use higher process temperatures, there are many issues that have so far prevented the use of higher process temperatures in continuous carburizing furnaces.

3. High-temperature Carburizing Benefits and Issues

3.1. Benefits

The aim of high-temperature carburizing is to shorten the process time. The target set at the planning stage was to reduce the carburizing time from 480 min. for ordinary carburizing to 100 min. It was expected that the following four benefits would be obtained as a result.

- (1) Reduction of capital investment by reducing the number of carburizing furnaces needed
- (2) Reduction of furnace installation space
- (3) Energy savings
- (4) Reduction of the amount of work in progress

Reduction of capital investment and furnace installation space would produce especially large benefits. With regard to capital investment, one high-temperature carburizing furnace could do the work of five ordinary carburizing furnaces. That would also reduce the necessary installation space to one-fifth.

3.2. Issues and solutions

The issues involved in implementing hightemperature carburizing were divided into the following four categories.

- (1) Preventing coarsening of part material grains
- (2) Improved accuracy for analyzing the CO₂ concentration in the furnace
- (3) Preventing heat treatment distortion of parts
- (4) Assuring the durability of the carburizing furnace

3.2.1. Preventing coarsening of part material grains

The growth of coarser steel grains (Fig. 2) reduces the resistance of carburized parts to fatigue and pitting. With the previously used material, coarser grains developed as a result of carburizing for 3-4 hours at temperatures above 980 C.

One general way of preventing coarsening of materials is to apply a two-stage quenching operation whereby the part is initially cooled below the A1 transformation temperature before quenching and is then reheated to the quenching temperature and subjected to quenching. However, this method involves large energy losses due to reheating, and it is also difficult to control the part temperature.

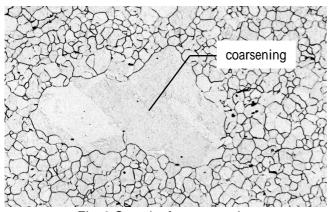


Fig. 2 Growth of coarser grains

これに代わる方法として,処理品の鋼材にNb(ニオブ), A(アルミニウム), およびN(窒素)を加え,Nb(CN), AINの粒界への析出により結晶粒の粗大化を防止する粗大化防止鋼を開発した.

3.2.2. 炉内CO2濃度の分析精度向上

炉内雰囲気の浸炭力をカーボンポテンシャル(以下CP)と呼んでいる.このCPを制御するため,炉内のCO,CO2,CH4ガス濃度を計測し,ガス供給量をコントロールしている.しかしながら,CP0.9%を確保するには,炉内が高温になればなるほどCO2の分析精度を上げる必要があるので(Table 1),高精度の赤外線分析装置を導入した.

3.2.3. 処理品の熱処理変形

処理品の熱処理変形は,処理後の研削取り代に大きな影響を与える.変形の要因には処理時の荷姿,炉内雰囲気状態,焼入れ時の冷却性などが考えられ,中でも焼入れ時の冷却性は変形に大きく影響する.焼入れ剤(ソルト)に含まれる微量の水分が冷却性に強く影響することに着目して,常にこの水分量をモニタしながら均一な冷却性が得られるシステムを採用した.

3.2.4. 浸炭炉の耐久性

一般に材料の高温強度は950 を越えると急激に低下するため、高温浸炭炉において特に問題となる部材は、炉内煉瓦、ヒータ、搬送ローラ、攪拌ファン、トレイ(浸炭治具)である.これらの材料選定に際しては、炉メーカでの高温実験炉(1050)のデータを基にクリープ強度に注目した.また、高温時の炉の変形についても検討している.

Table 1 Relation between carburizing temperature and accuracy of CO₂ analyzer

		(CP: 0.9%,	CO ₂ : 4%)
Temperature (℃)	900	950	1050
CO ₂ in furnace (%)	0.23	0.13	0.048

Instead of adopting that method, we developed a new steel as an alternative way of preventing coarsening of material grains. Neodymium (Nb), aluminum (Al) and nitrogen (N) have been added to the pulley steel. These elements induce precipitation of Nb(CN) and AlN at the grain boundaries, which works to prevent the growth of coarser grains.

3.2.2. Improved accuracy for analyzing the CO₂ concentration in the furnace

The carburizing capacity of the furnace atmosphere is called the carbon potential (CP). To control the CP, the quantities of gas supplied to the furnace are controlled based on measurements of the CO, CO₂ and CH₄ gas concentrations in the furnace. However, to assure a CP of 0.9%, the CO₂ content must be analyzed with increasingly greater accuracy as the furnace temperature rises (Table 1). A high-accuracy infrared CO₂ analyzer was adopted for that purpose.

3.2.3. Heat treatment distortion of parts

Heat treatment distortion of parts greatly affects the amount of grinding subsequently done on carburized parts. Various factors are thought to cause heat treatment distortion, including the way parts are positioned in the furnace, the state of the atmosphere in the furnace and cooling characteristics during quenching. The latter factor in particular greatly influences distortion. Attention was paid to the fact that the minute water content in the quenching salt bath strongly affects cooling characteristics. A system was adopted for obtaining uniform cooling by constantly monitoring the water content.

3.2.4. Carburizing furnace durability

In general, the high-temperature strength of materials declines sharply at temperatures over 950. Accordingly, the components of the high-temperature carburizing furnace that especially pose a problem are the inside bricks, heaters, conveyor rollers, stirring fans and trays (carburizing jigs). In selecting the materials for these furnace components, attention was focused on creep strength, based on data obtained from a furnace manufacturer for an experimental 1050 high-temperature furnace. Furnace distortion at high temperatures was also examined.

今回使用した材料は,炉内煉瓦にはムライトを,ヒータにはカンタルAPMを用い,耐熱強度を1400 としている.ローラ,ファン,トレイには高温でのクリープ特性に優れる高Ni,高Cr超耐熱鋼を用いた.

4.高温浸炭炉の構成

今回開発した高温浸炭炉の概要は次の通りである.

・浸炭温度 : 1050

・炉体構造 : ハースローラ型連続式浸炭炉

・焼入れ : ソルト焼入れ(200)

・雰囲気ガス : 炉内変成ガス(ブタン+エア)

・炉内雰囲気制御 :赤外線分析装置CO/CO2制御

特に炉体構造は今回の開発の重要なポイントである. Fig. 3に示すように,炉内に扉で隔離した8つの部屋を設け,ゾーンごとに雰囲気設定ができるようにした.搬送には駆動ローラを用い,トレイ検知には信頼性の高い2系統のレーザ式光電管を用いている(Fig. 4).

は脱脂室で,処理品の表面に付着している切削油を蒸発,除去するとともに850 まで昇温させる.

の加熱室で更に950 まで上昇させ, の浸炭室1では1050 まで昇温するとともに処理品の表面炭素濃度を増大する.

の浸炭室2では表面炭素濃度を更に増大し,内部との炭素濃度勾配を大きくして内部への拡散速度を高める. の拡散室では浸炭された炭素を表面から内部に向かって拡散させる. 浸炭が終わると の冷却室1及び の冷却室2を経て の焼入れ前加熱室で焼入れ温度の840 に保持した後,炉外の200 に溶融した ソルト槽に浸漬して急冷,焼入れする.

The materials selected for the furnace included mullite for the inside bricks and Kanthal APM for the heaters, thereby achieving heat resistance of 1400 °C. An ultrahigh heat resistant steel with high Ni and C contents and outstanding creep strength at high temperatures was used for the rollers, fans and trays.

4. Structure of High-temperature Carburizing Furnace

An outline of the newly developed high-temperature carburizing furnace is given below.

Carburizing temperature: 1050 €

Type: Continuous hearth roller carburizing furnace

Quenching: Salt bath quenching at 200 €

Atmosphere gas: In-furnace modified gas (butane + air) Furnace atmosphere control: Infrared CO/CO2 analyzer-based control

The furnace structure in particular is one of the key points of this newly developed carburizing furnace. As shown in Fig. 3, the furnace consists of eight chambers separated by doors, allowing the atmosphere in each zone to be controlled independently. A live roller conveyor is used to transport the trays, and two laser photoelectric sensors with high reliability are used to detect the trays (Fig. 4).

The first zone is the degreasing chamber (1) where the temperature is raised to 850 $^{\circ}$ C and cutting oil residue on part surfaces is removed by steam. The second zone is the heating chamber (2) where the temperature is increased to 950 $^{\circ}$ C, and the third zone is the first carburizing chamber (3) where the temperature is raised to 1050 $^{\circ}$ C, and the carbon concentration at the part surface is increased.

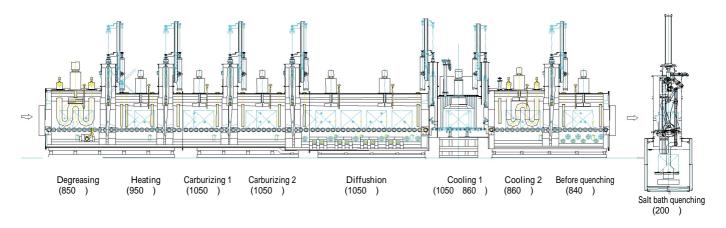


Fig. 3 Vertical section of High-temperature carburizing continuous furnace

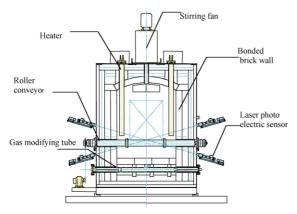


Fig. 4 Cross section of furnace

ソルトには焼入れ性向上のため,若干の水分を添加している.実用上の水分量は処理材の焼入れ性,形状,重量と芯部硬さ,熱処理変形量を考慮してソルト重量比で0.35%にコントロールしている.水分量は水分自動添加装置で監視しており,設定した水分量を下回った場合は自動的に水を添加する機構となっている.

この自動水添加機構では,加熱したピース(センサ)をソルト槽へ浸漬して予め決めた温度まで冷却する時間をパラメータとして添加水分量を決めている.また,添加する水には,処理品の洗浄工程で排出したソルト廃液の濃縮液を利用し,ソルトの再生にも努めている.

これら一連の浸炭炉には、炉床に設置した変成管(触媒)にブタンとエアを通して変成させたCO , H_2 , N_2 ガスに微量のブタンガスを加えた混合ガスが送り込まれる.触媒には炉内温度の比較的低温領域まで変成可能な白金族の触媒を用いた.この触媒は貴金属であるが,安価な自動車用二元触媒をそのまま利用しており,交換作業も容易である (Fig. 5).

5. 実用化における問題点

実用化した際の大きな問題点として,当初計画 した処理時間では予定の浸炭深さが得られず,ま た製鋼,鍛造ロットが変わると,しばしば処理品 のミクロ組織に結晶粒粗大化が認められた.

前者については暫定的に処理時間を延長,後者については浸炭温度を30 下げて処理することにした.

これらの原因を究明した結果,結晶粒粗大化防止元素として添加しているNbが浸炭を阻害していることが判明した.Nbが浸炭を阻害する要因としては,Nb添加による結晶粒の超微細化,および領域が狭くなり炭素の固溶限温度が低下するなどが考えられる.

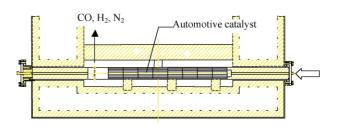


Fig. 5 Cross section of gas modifying tube

The fourth zone is the second carburizing chamber (4) where the surface concentration of carbon is increased further, thereby increasing the carbon concentration gradient between the surface and the interior, resulting in a faster rate of carbon diffusion toward the interior of the parts. The fifth zone is the diffusion chamber where the absorbed carbon diffuses from the surface toward the interior. Following carburization, the parts pass through the first and second cooling chambers (6 and 7) into the heating chamber before quenching (8) where they are kept at the quenching temperature of 840 °C. The parts then exit the furnace and are immersed in a salt bath at 200 °C for rapid cooling and quenching.

A small amount of water is added to the salt bath to improve quenching performance. The actual water content is controlled to a ratio of 0.35% of the salt weight, taking into account the quenchability of the part material and the part shape, weight, core hardness, and degree of heat treatment distortion. The water content is monitored by an automatic water adder that is designed to add water to the bath automatically whenever the water content falls below the set level.

With this automatic water adding mechanism, a heated sensor is immersed in the salt bath and the time it takes for the sensor to cool to a predetermined temperature is used as the parameter for determining the amount of water to be added. The waste salt solution discharged from the part washing process is concentrated and the resulting fluid is used as the water that is added to the bath, which also serves to recycle the salt.

A mixed gas is circulated through the furnace chambers by means of a gas-modifying tube (catalyst) installed under the furnace floor. This mixed gas contains a minute amount of butane gas that is added to the CO, H_2 and N_2 gases, which are modified by the flow of butane and air. A platinum group catalyst is used that allows the gases to be modified at a relatively low furnace temperature. Although the catalyst is a precious metal, an inexpensive two-way automotive catalyst is used without any modification and allows easy replacement (Fig. 5).

Fig.6 にSCr420H1鋼にNb添加あり,なしでの 1050 高温浸炭した結果を示している. Nb添加したものはNb添加なしのものに比べ,30~40%有効硬化層深さが減少している(但し,Nb添加なしのものは結晶粒粗大化が著しい).また,Nbの添加量が増すにつれ浸炭性が悪化することも実験で明らかになった.

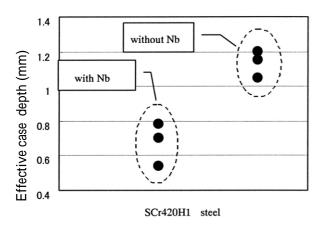


Fig. 6 Influence of Nb additive

当初SCr420H1をベースにNbを添加したSCr420H1-VM鋼を使用していたが,上記浸炭深さが得られない問題を解決できなかったため,現在ではMr(マンガン)を増量して 領域を広げた新鋼種であるSCr422M-VM鋼に変更して浸炭性の向上を図っている.これにより,処理時間は185分 120分に短縮出来た.

結晶粒の粗大化についても調査を重ねた結果,成分添加量の管理だけでは品質が安定しないため,粗大化防止元素であるNbの均一分散に影響する鋼材圧延温度,鍛造加熱温度等が重要管理項目であることが判った.しかしながら,高度の分析器を用いても超微粒子であるNb(CN),AINの挙動が掴みきれないため,均一分散を定量的に把握する手段が未だ確立されていないのも事実である.そのため,現在も本材料受入時にはロットごとに結晶粒の粗大化を確認して,合格したロットのみを受け入れる体制をとっている.

6. まとめ

1999年5月から稼働を開始して4年近くが経過する高温浸炭炉(Fig. 7)であるが,現在まで大きなトラブルこそないものの,振り返って見ると数多くの改善を織り込んできた.

特に高温浸炭用鋼の開発においては,設備の稼動後も三菱自動車工業(株)材料技術部殿,鋼材メーカの

5. Problems in Practical Implementation

One of the biggest problems encountered in the course of implementing this carburizing furnace was that the desired case depth was not obtained at the initially planned carburizing time. Another major problem was that coarsening of the grains was frequently observed in the microstructure of the carburized parts when the steel and forging lots changed. The former issue was addressed by provisionally lengthening the carburizing process time, and the latter issue was dealt with by lowering the carburizing temperature by 30 °C.

As a result of investigating the causes of these problems, it was found that the Nb element added for preventing the growth of coarser grains was interfering with carburization. Among the factors inducing that interference, it was thought that the addition of Nb led to the growth of ultra-fine grains and narrowed the region, thereby lowering the critical temperature at which carbon can form a solid solution.

Figure 6 shows the results obtained when SCr42H1 steel, with and without the Nb additive, was carburized at a high temperature of 1050 °C. The steel specimens with the Nb additive showed a reduction in the effective case depth of 30-40% compared with the specimens without Nb. However, the specimens without the Nb additive displayed marked growth of coarser grains. It was also confirmed experimentally that carburization performance was degraded as the Nb content was increased.

The material used initially for the pulleys was SCr420H1-VM steel, prepared by adding Nb to the base SCr420H1 steel, but the desired case depth was not obtained as mentioned above. Because that problem was not resolved, we switched to SCr422M-VM steel in an effort to improve carburization performance. This new type of steel has a higher manganese (Mg) content that expands the region. As a result, it was possible to shorten the carburizing process time from 185 to 120 min

The factors causing the growth of coarser grains were also investigated repeatedly. It was found that simply controlling the additive quantities alone did not result in stable material quality. Other control parameters found to be important included the steel rolling temperature and the forging temperature, which affect the uniform dispersion of the Nb element added to prevent coarsening of the grains. However, it was not possible to ascertain the behavior of ultra-small Nb(CN) and AIN particles even with the aid of a high-performance analyzer. Consequently, a method of quantifying uniform Nb dispersion has still not been established at this point. For that reason, the grain size of every lot of received steel is being confirmed at present, and only those lots that meet the grain size criterion are accepted.



Fig. 7 High-temperature continuous carburizing furnace

新日本製鐵(株)殿,素材鍛造メーカの(株)ゴーシュー殿と共同で結晶粒粗大化を防ぎ,浸炭性を改善する材料ノウハウの蓄積に多大な労力を費やした.その主な理由の一つとして,高温浸炭用鋼の特性に精通していなかったことが反省点として挙げられるが,このことは今後の高温浸炭の取り組みにおいて大きな財産となると確信している.処理時間の大幅短縮を可能にした高温浸炭であるが,未だ発展途上にあり,今後も生産性,耐久性,コスト面で最適な条件を見極めていきたい.最後に長期に渡り高温浸炭の開発に携わっていただい

た方々の支援に感謝する.

6. Conclusion

The high-temperature carburizing furnace has been in operation for nearly four years now since it was brought on line in May 1999 (Fig. 7). Although no major problems have occurred so far, many improvements have been made in the intervening years.

In the course of developing the new steel for high-temperature carburizing in particular, a great deal of effort was expended in preventing the growth of coarser grains and in accumulating material know-how for improving carburization performance even after the furnace was installed. That work was done jointly with the Material Engineering Department of Mitsubishi Motors Corp., Nippon Steel Corp., a steel maker, and Gohsyu Corporation, a manufacturer of forgings. Upon reflection, one major reason why it took so much effort was our unfamiliarity with the properties of steel for high-temperature carburizing. We are confident that the knowledge gained through that work will be a big asset in improving high-temperature carburizing further in the future.

High-temperature carburizing has made it possible to reduce the process time substantially, but the carburizing process is still under development. In the future, we want to find the optimum conditions with respect to productivity, durability and cost.

Finally, the author would like to thank many individuals for their continued support over many months in connection with the development of the high-temperature carburizing process.

Author



Katsuya FUJIWARA

ATCUソフトウェア検証用HLSの開発と応用

The Development and Application of HILS for ATCU Software Verification

市川 修二* 佐藤 雅行** 中岩 宏和* 勝 生水** 藤塚 亮平** 守田 暁智** 松村 利夫***
Shuji ICHIKAWA Masayuki SATO Hirokazu NAKAIWA Fuyuku KATSU Ryohei FUJITSUKA Toshinori MORITA Toshio MATSUMURA

抄 録 自動車用自動変速機は,小型軽量化と高性能を両立させるために,電子制御化が進んでいる.制御システムは,コントロールユニットのマイコンチップにソフトウェアとして実装される.近年,その規模や複雑さが急速に増大しているので,その品質保証のための,ソフトウェアの検証技術が重要な要素のひとつとなっている.

本稿では,制御ソフトウェアを検証するHILS (Hardware In the Loop Simulator:ハードウェア・イン・ザ・ループ・シミュレータ)の概要を述べ,その適用例と効果について説明する.

Summary Electronic control has been applied to automatic transmissions to achieve a compact, lightweight design combined with high performance. Most of the control system consists of the software implemented in a microprocessor chip in the control unit. Because the scale and complexity of the control software have been increasing rapidly, software verification technology is a key element of quality assurance. This article outlines a hardware-in-the-loop simulator (HILS) that has been developed for verifying control software and presents examples of its application and benefits.

1.はじめに

近年,自動車の排気,燃費,快適性といった諸 性能を高次元にバランスさせる必要性が増してき ている.これにともない,自動変速機(以下,ATと いう)に対する小型軽量化やレスポンス向上,変速 ショックの低減など性能向上の要求も高まってき ており,要求される性能を達成するためのひとつ の方策として,ATの電子制御化が進められている. 最近では,ワンウェイクラッチレス化,クラッチ 制御油圧の直動化など、よりハイレベルな性能を 達成している1)2). ATの電子制御は, AT電子制御ユ ニット(以下, ATCUという)にソフトウェアとして 実装されるが、このソフトウェアは、制御内容の 急速な高度化にともない,大容量化,複雑化が加 速度的に進行している(Fig. 1). また一方で,より 良い商品をより早く市場に投入するという観点か ら、制御およびソフトウェアの開発期間の短縮も 求められており、開発効率の向上への取り組みも 展開されている3).

極度に複雑化したソフトウェアを欠陥無く開発するためには,多大な時間と労力が必要である. 高品質なソフトウェア開発のための方法論として, CMM⁴のようなガイドラインも提案されているが, There has been a growing need in recent years for vehicles to attain an optimal balance of exhaust emission performance, fuel economy and comfort, among other performance requirements. In this connection, there have also been stronger demands to improve automatic transmission (AT) performance, including size and weight reductions, improvement of response and mitigation of shift shock. One approach taken to achieve the required performance has been to apply electronic control to ATs. Even higher levels of performance have been achieved in recent years by eliminating one-way clutches or by modulating the clutch control pressure directly. (1, 2)

Electronic control of an AT is accomplished by implementing the software in the AT control unit (ATCU). The volume and complexity of this control software have been increasing at an accelerated pace, as the control tasks have rapidly become more sophisticated (Fig. 1). On the other hand, it is also necessary to shorten the development lead time for control systems and software from the standpoint of getting improved products to the market faster. This has prompted efforts to improve development work efficiency. (3)

Functional Component Development Department No. 2

Functional Component Development Department No. 1

*** 先行開発部

Advance Development Department

^{1.} Introduction

^{*} 第二機能部品開発部

^{**} 第一機能部品開発部

高度な信頼性を要求される自動車用パワートレイ ンでは,実際に作成されたソフトウェアの作動を, 実際のATまたはシミュレータを使って検証するこ とが重要である、特に,センサ・アクチュエータ の故障診断,フェールセーフ制御や,制御対象の フィードバック系を多く含んだ制御は,実機に近 い環境で検証を実施する必要性が非常に高い5).

本報告では, ATCUソフトウェアの検証を効率的 に遂行するためのツールとして開発したHILS(ハー ドウェア・イン・ザ・ループ・シミュレータ)の概 要とその適用例,効果について解説する.

2. ATCUソフトウェアの構成

ATCUソフトウェアの基本的な構成をFig. 2に示 す.ATCUソフトウェアは主に,

- (1)入出力の信号処理に必要なインターフェース
- (2)道路状況や走行状態により変速パターンを切換 え,スムーズな走行を実現する変速制御
- (3)燃費性能や静粛性を向上するためのロックアッ プ制御
- (4)ショックの少ないなめらかな変速を実現するた め,各クラッチ・ブレーキに供給する油圧を適 正に制御する油圧制御
- (5)制御系が故障したときに,故障を検知し,警告 を発する故障診断や,安全な走行を保証するた めのフェールセーフ制御

により構成されている.

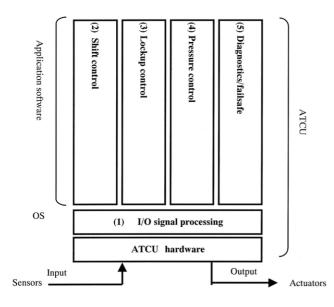


Fig. 2 Structure of ATCU software

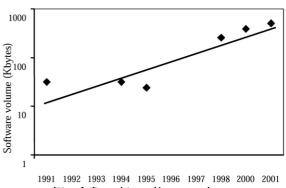


Fig. 1 Trend in software volume

The development of extremely complex, defect-free software requires enormous amounts of time and labor. The Capability Maturity Model (CMM)(4) and other guidelines have been proposed as approaches to the development of high-quality software. However, for automotive powertrains that require high levels of reliability, it is necessary to verify the operation of newly developed control software by using a real AT or simulations. It is particularly necessary to verify an AT control program under an environment resembling the conditions of real-world use. Such programs include failure diagnostics for the sensors and actuators, failsafe control and many feedback systems for the objects of control.

This article outlines a hardware-in-the-loop simulator (HILS) that we have developed for verifying the operation of ATCU software efficiently and presents examples of its application and benefits.

2. Structure of ATCU Software

The basic structure of ATCU software is shown in Fig. 2. The software mainly consists of the following components:

- (1) Interfaces necessary for processing input/output signals
- (2) Shift control for achieving smooth driving performance by varying the shift parameters according to the road surface and driving conditions
- (3) Lockup control for improving fuel economy and operating quietness
- (4) Pressure control for optimally controlling the hydraulic pressure supplied to all of the clutches and brakes so as to achieve smooth shifting with little shift shock
- (5) Diagnostics for detecting control system failures and issuing warnings and failsafe control for ensuring safe driving

3. 従来のATCUソフトウェア検証の課題

電子制御システムを開発する際には、制御システムの設計、制御ロジック・ソフトウェアの設計、ATCUプログラムの作成とデバッグ、制御ロジック検証と実車試験によるキャリブレーションという一連の工程が必要である(Fig. 3).この中で、制御ロジックを検証するということは、実車が制御仕様どおりに機能することを保証することである.

従来は、シミュレータが発信する信号によりATCUを動作させて検証していたが、シミュレータはシミュレーションモデルに基づいているわけではなく、ATCUを動作させるための単なる信号発生装置(Fig. 4)であったため、実車状態と同一の試験条件の設定が難しく、制御ロジックの検証には長時間を要していた。

ここでは, Fig. 2に示すソフトウェアのうち,機能の増加の著しい変速制御と故障診断・フェールセーフ制御についてその概要を述べる.

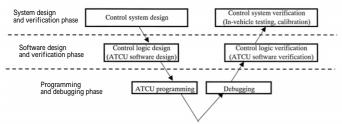


Fig. 3 Control system development

3.1. 変速制御用ソフトウェアの検証方法

変速制御用ソフトウェアには,あらかじめ決められた走行モードの切り替えポイントやシフトポイントが設定されている.検証時には,それに基づいた走行モードの切り替え,シフトなどが正確に行われるかを確認する.モード切り替えポイントやシフトポイントは,車速,スロットル開度,温度条件など,複数のパラメータの複雑な組み合わせにより決定される.従来の方法では,手作業のためパラメータ設定精度の確保が難しく,確認作業のやり直し等が発生していた.

- 3.2. 故障診断・フェールセーフ用ソフトウェアの検証方法 故障診断・フェールセーフ制御関連のソフトウェアを検証する際には,以下の2点を重点に検証する必要がある.
- (1)ATCUが動作中に,故意にシステムを故障状態としたとき,その故障を認識するとともに,フェールセーフ動作状態に移行するか.
- (2)システムが正常に作動しているにもかかわらず, システムが故障していると 誤認することはないか.

3. Issues in the Conventional Process for ATCU Software Verification

The development of an electronic control system involves a series of operations, as outlined in Fig. 3. These include control system design, control logic and software design, ATCU program development and debugging, control logic verification and calibration based on actual driving tests. Among these operations, control logic verification means ensuring that an actual vehicle will function as specified in the control system specifications.

In the conventional process, the control software was verified by sending signals from a simulator to actuate the ATCU being tested. The simulator was not based on a simulation model, but was simply a signal generator used to operate the ATCU (Fig. 4). Consequently, verifying the control logic was a time-consuming task because it was difficult to set the test conditions so that they were identical to those of actual use on real vehicles.

An outline is given here of the procedures for verifying the shift control and diagnostics/failsafe control software, the functionality of which has increased markedly among the components of the control software.

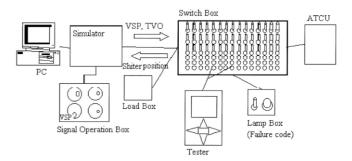


Fig. 4 Conventional ATCU simulator

3.1. Verification procedure for shift control software

The shift control software contains predetermined driving mode switching points and shift points. The verification process involves confirming that the AT switches driving modes and shifts properly according to these predetermined points. Mode switching points and shift points are determined by intricate combinations of various parameters, including the vehicle speed, throttle valve opening, temperature and other conditions. In the conventional process, it was difficult to ensure the accuracy of the parameter settings because they were all set manually. That made it necessary at times to redo the confirmation tasks, among other problems.

従来のATCU単体シミュレータには、シミュレーションモデルによるフィードバック系がなかった、従って、基本的に手動操作によって、速度や温度など、各種の動作パラメータを設定しており、システムの挙動を正確に模擬するのが難しく、以下の課題があった。

- (1)FTP(Federal test procedure; 北米排気試験)モードなど,特定の走行パターンでの故障検出性の検証が難しい.
- (2)正常状態で,故障であると誤認識しないことを検証するには,多くの時間を要す.
- (3)診断対象の部品やサブシステムの数が多く,かつ故障モードも,断線,短絡,不完全作動など多岐にわたるため,全ての故障検出の検証には多大な工数が必要である.

4. HILSの概要

前述のような課題を解決するため,AT,エンジン,車両などのリアルタイムシミュレーションモデルを組み込んだHILSを開発した.外観写真をFig. 5に示す.HILSは,Fig. 6,7の論理的,物理的構成図に示すとおり,ATCU実物をコンピュータ上のシミュレーションモデルと電気的に接続し動作させるものである.

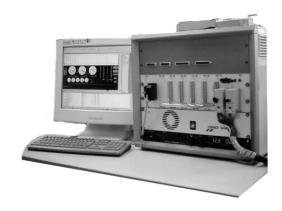


Fig. 5 External appearance of HILS

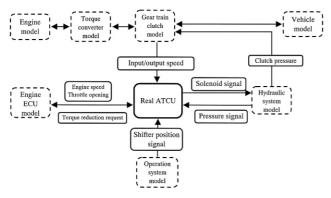


Fig. 6 Logical schematic of HIL simulation models

3.2. Verification procedure for diagnostics/failsafe control software

In verifying the software related to diagnostics and failsafe control, priority must be given to the following two points.

- (1) When a failure is intentionally induced in a control system during ATCU operation, does the software recognize the failure and does it switch to the failsafe operating mode?
- (2) Does the software mistakenly judge that a failure has occurred even though the system is operating normally?

The conventional ATCU simulator itself did not include a feedback system based on a simulation model. Accordingly, the various operating parameters, including the vehicle speed, temperature and the like, basically had to be set manually, making it difficult to simulate the behavior of the system accurately. That gave rise to the following problems.

- (1) It was difficult to verify failure detection performance under certain special driving patterns such as the U.S. Federal Test Procedure (FTP) mode for exhaust emission testing.
- (2) Verifying that a failure was not mistakenly recognized under normal operation was a time-consuming task.
- (3) It took a great deal of time and labor to verify the detection of all possible failures owing to the large number of parts and subsystems subject to diagnostics and the many different types of failure modes, including broken wires, short-circuits, incomplete operation and others.

4. Overview of HILS

To resolve the above-mentioned issues, the HIL simulator was developed which incorporates real-time simulation models of the AT, engine, vehicle and other elements. Figure 5 is a photograph of the simulator's external appearance. As indicated by the logical and physical schematics in Figs. 6 and 7, a real ATCU is connected electrically to the simulation models on the computer and actuated via the HIL simulator.

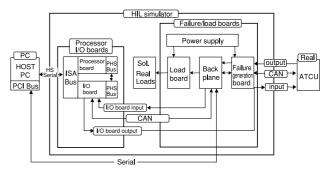


Fig. 7 Physical schematic of HIL simulator

4.1. HILSの構成と動作

HILSの動作を簡単に説明する.

ATCUは,ハーネスによりHILSのハードウエアと接続されていて,HILS内のプロセッサボード上で稼動している各シミュレーションモデルとの間で,入出力報を電気信号として授受している(Fig. 6,7)

このシミュレーションモデルは,ホストPCの MATLAB/Simulinkを使って作成・修正され,HILシミュレータへダウンロードされる (Fig. 7, 8)

ホストPCでは,シミュレーションモデルやATCU の稼動条件の設定操作と,ATCU内部のソフトウェアの作動データ,車速などのシミュレーションモデルの作動データのモニタが集中的に行なわれる(Fig.9)

HILS内の欠陥生成ボードでは,ソレノイドなどのアクチュエータの故障がシミュレーションされる(Fig. 7)

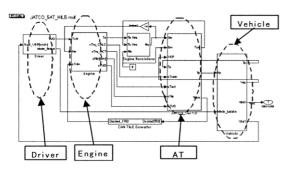


Fig. 8 Simulation models

4.2. リアルタイムシミュレーションモデル

HILSのプロセッサボード上で稼動するシミュレーションモデルは,実質的業界標準となっているMATLAB/Simulinkを用いて作成している(Fig. 8)これにより、各シミュレーションモデルの共同開発先との互換性も確保される.

また,ATCUのリアルタイム動作を可能とするためには,250 µ secの演算周期に対応することが必要であり,シミュレーションモデルの各部は,必要な精度を確保したうえで,高速化している.Fig.10は精度を確保した例である.変速時の油圧制御には十分な精度をもったギア比が必要であり,実機との偏差が3%以内となるようにした.

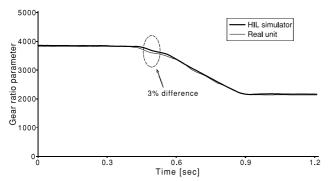


Fig. 10 Gear ratio parameter calculation accuracy

4.1. HILS configuration and operation

The operation of the HIL simulator is briefly explained here. An ATCU is connected to the HILS hardware via an electrical harness for exchanging input/output information in the form of electrical signals with the various simulation models running on the simulator's internal processor board (Figs. 6 and 7).

The simulation models are created and modified using MATLAB/Simulink that reside on a host PC, and are then downloaded to the HIL simulator (Figs. 7 and 8). The tasks of setting the operating conditions of the simulation models and the ATCU and monitoring the operating data of the software inside the ATCU and the operating data of the simulation models, including the vehicle speed and other parameters, are all done on the host PC (Fig. 9). The failure generation board incorporated in the HIL simulator replicates actuator failures, including those of the solenoids (Fig. 7).

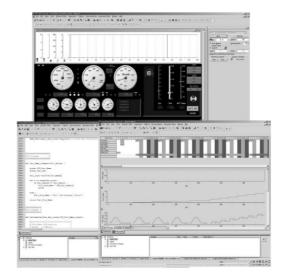


Fig. 9 Simulator operation and monitor window

4.2. Real-time simulation models

The simulation models that run on the HILS processor board are created using MATLAB/Simulink, which have become a de facto industry standard (Fig. 8). This also ensures interoperability with our joint development partners of the various simulation models.

To facilitate real-time operation of an ATCU, the simulation models must be able to handle calculation cycles of 250 μ sec. The speed of the various parts of the simulation models has been increased while maintaining the necessary accuracy. Figure 10 shows an example of the accuracy maintained in a gear ratio parameter calculation. Pressure control during a shift must ensure a sufficiently accurate gear ratio. The results indicate that the difference between the simulated result and a real system was kept within 3%.

4.3. 自動化

多数の故障モードを連続的に検証する際には,自動運転が有効であり,自動化を可能とする仕組みも開発した.ホストPC上で稼動しているHILSの制御ソフトウェア(ControlDesk)は,Stimulus Signal Generationや,Python Scriptを付属機能として持っており,自動化にはこれを活用した.この仕組みと欠陥生成ボードにより,故障診断・フェールセーフソフトウェア検証が完全に自動化され,検証結果のレポート作成も可能となった.

5. HILSの応用例と効果

本HILSの,当社の新型FF用5速AT(JF506E)への応用例を以下に説明する.

5.1. 応用例

Fig. 11は,変速制御のソフトウェアを検証した結果である.走行状況変化に応じて,シフトモードが切り替わっていることが,Mode flagの変化により確認できている.

Fig. 12は,ソレノイド故障診断制御のソフトウェアを検証した結果(FTPモード走行1山途中まで)である.FTPモード走行中に故障検出が完了したことがFailure flagの変化により確認できている.

Fig. 11およびFig. 12には,同一運転条件時の実車での実験データも併せて記載している. これらに示されるように,本HILSでのソフトウェアの動作の検証精度は十分なものとなっている

5.2. 効果

本HILSの応用により,以下の効果が得られた.

(1)効率向上

HILSを使用しない場合に比べ,検証工数は約25%低減できた.

(2)精度向上

変速時の油圧制御を検証する場面では,従来のATCU単体シミュレータでの結果と比べ,実機実験結果との偏差が最大で49%から3%に,46%改善された(Fig. 13)

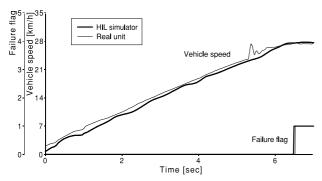


Fig. 11 Results for shift control

4.3. Automation

Automatic operation of the simulator is effective when verifying a large number of failure modes continuously. Functions have also been developed to facilitate automatic operation. The HILS control software (ControlDesk) that runs on the host PC incorporates auxiliary functions for stimulus signal generation and Python Script, which are utilized to achieve automatic operation. These capabilities and the failure generation board completely automate the verification process for the diagnostics/failsafe control software, and they also facilitate the creation of reports of the verification results.

5. Examples of HILS Application and Benefits

This section describes the application of the HIL simulator to our newly developed 5-speed AT (JF506E) for use on front-wheel-drive cars.

5.1. Application example

Figure 11 shows the verification results for the shift control software. The change in the mode flag confirms that the shift mode switched properly according to the change in the driving conditions.

The verification results for the solenoid diagnostics control software are shown in Fig. 12. These results are for operation midway through the first acceleration phase of the FTP mode. The change in the mode flag confirms that failure detection was completed during this phase of FTP mode driving.

The experimental data obtained with an actual vehicle under identical driving conditions are also shown in Figs. 11 and 12. These results confirm that the HIL simulator provides sufficient accuracy for verifying the operation of control software.

5.2. Benefits

The application of the HIL simulator achieved the following benefits.

(1) Improved efficiency

The use of the HIL simulator reduced the man-hours needed for software verification by approximately 25% compared with the previous situation without it.

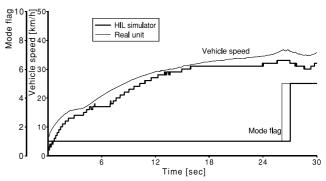


Fig. 12 Results for solenoid diagnosis

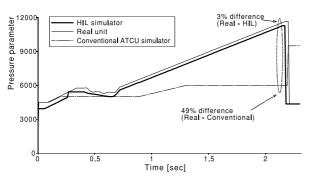


Fig. 13 Accuracy improvement obtained with HILS

6. おわりに

ATCUソフトウェアの検証を効率的にかつ高精度に実行するためのHILSを開発,適用し,その有効性を確認した.現在,我々はコンピュータを使った制御開発の効率向上をモデルベース開発として推進中であり,HILSはその狙いに沿った重要な素である.今後,さらなる開発のスピードアップと製品の品質向上のため,このシミュレータを継続的に改良していくとともに,制御システム検証業務,キャリブレーション業務などへの適用範囲の拡大も検討する.

最後に,本稿に関する開発にあたり,多大なご協力をいただいた方々に感謝の意を表する.

参考文献

- 1) 御子柴,高田,他:新型5速オートマチックトランスミッションの開発,自動車技術会20015593(2001)
- 2)鎌田,中山,他:新型ファミリア用ATの電子制御開発について,自動車技術会8940450(1998)
- 3)勝,松村:自動変速機の変速性能シミュレーションシステムに関する考察,自動車技術会2001542g2001)
- 4)Mark C. Paulk, et al.: Capability Maturity Model for Software, Version 1.1, CMU/SEI-93-TR-024, ESC-TR-177(1993)
- 5) 一野瀬,横山,他:車間自動制御システム用HILシ ミュレータの開発,自動車技術会 20015592(2001)

(2) Improved accuracy

A comparison was made with the results for the conventional ATCU simulator when verifying the pressure control during shifting. The HIL simulator reduced the maximum difference between the simulated results and the experimental data obtained with a real system to 3%, a reduction of 46% compared with a difference of 49% seen for the conventional simulator (Fig. 13).

6. Conclusion

A hardware-in-the-loop simulator (HILS) has been developed for verifying ATCU software efficiently and with high accuracy, and its effectiveness has been confirmed in an application to a real AT. We are now using a model-based development method to improve the efficiency of developing AT control software on a computer, and the HIL simulator is an important element in line with this objective. Continuous improvements will be made to this simulator in order to speed up the development of new products and improve quality further. In addition, we also plan to examine expanding the scope of its application to include verification work for control systems, calibration work and other activities.

Finally, we would like to thank many individuals for their tremendous cooperation in connection with the development of the HIL simulator.

References

- (1) Y. Mikoshiba, T. Takada, et al., "Development of a New 5-speed Automatic Transmission," JSAE No. 20015593 (2001) (in Japanese).
- (2) M. Kamata, Y. Nakayama, et al., "Development of an AT Electronic Control Program for the New Familia," JSAE No. 8940450 (1998) (in Japanese).
- (3) F. Katsu and T. Matsumura, "A Study of a Shift Performance Simulation System for Automatic Transmissions," JSAE No. 20015429 (2001) (in Japanese).
- (4) Mark C. Paulk, et al., "Capability Maturity Model for Software," Version 1.1, CMU/SEI-93-TR-024, ESC-TR-177 (1993).
- (5) M. Ichinose, Á. Yokoyama, et al., "Development of a Hardware-in-the-loop Simulator for an Adaptive Cruise Control System," JSAE No. 20015592 (2001) (in Japanese).

Authors



Shuji ICHIKAWA



Masayuki SATO



Hirokazu NAKAIWA



Fuyuku KATSU



Rvohei FUJITSUKA



Toshinori MORITA



Toshio MATSUMURA

ABAQUSを用いた変速用湿式多板クラッチの面圧分布と温度分布の予測

Prediction of Contact Pressure Distribution and Temperature Distribution of a Wet Multi-disc Clutch Using ABAQUS

矢部 康志*

Yasushi YABE

抄 録 自動変速機において,変速性能とクラッチの耐久性を検討するため,クラッチの面圧分布と温度分布の予測が重要な課題となっている.クラッチの締結は熱と接触の連成問題で,非線形現象である.

本稿では、CAE解析ツールとして、ABAQUS/Standard、以下ABAQUSという)を用い、変速用湿式多板クラッチの面圧分布と温度分布を計算したので、解析手法と予測結果の例を紹介する.

Summary Prediction of the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution of the clutches in an automatic transmission is an important issue in examining shift performance and clutch durability. Clutch engagement involves a coupling problem of heat and contact, representing nonlinear phenomena. This article describes the prediction of the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution of a wet multidisk clutch using ABAQUS, a CAE analytical tool. The predicted results and simulation methods are explained.

1.はじめに

近年,自動変速機(以下ATという)の変速ショック低減などの変速性能向上のほか,耐久性向上が益々高まっている。それにともない,AT用湿式多板クラッチの面圧分布と温度分布の予測が重要な課題となり,従来から多くの研究がおこなわれている.⁽⁾²⁾

しかしながら、これまで発表されているものとしては、摩擦材油溝部に熱電対を埋め込みATの変速過程における発熱を実験解析したもの、摩擦材の接触状態について顕微鏡や画像処理により解析したもの、などがあるが、クラッチの面圧分布や温度分布についてシミュレーションし報告されたものは、あまりみられない。

当社は,数値解析として古くから,CAE解析ツールのABAQUSを用いて解析をおこなってきた.

特に面圧分布解析において,従来は,厚さがゼロになると力を伝えるような仮想的な要素を用いて,接触定義をおこなっていた.しかし,この場合,周辺要素の歪の影響を受け,必ずしも1回の計算トライアルで計算を終了させることができず,計算モデルの修正に時間を要し,解析時間がかかっていた.

本稿では,新しい接触定義を用い,従来の手法と同じ解析精度で,大幅な解析時間の短縮ができたので,面圧分布と温度分布について,解析手法と計算例を紹介する.

There have been growing demands in recent years for improvement of automatic transmission (AT) durability, in addition to further enhancement of shift performance such as by reducing shift shock. As a result, prediction of the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution of the wet multi-disc clutch used in ATs has become an important issue. A great deal of research has been done over the years on prediction methods.^{1) 2)}

Among the techniques announced so far, thermocouples have been embedded in the oil grooves of friction materials to facilitate experimental analysis of heat generation in the AT shift process. The contact condition of friction materials has also been analyzed by using microscopes and image processing. However, one sees very few reports about the use of simulations to predict the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution of AT clutches.

At JATCO, we have conducted such simulations using ABAQUS, a CAE analytical tool that has long been used for numerical analysis.

In previous analyses of contact pressure distribution in particular, contact has conventionally been defined using a hypothetical element that assumes force is transmitted when the element thickness becomes zero. However, in this case, it is not always possible to complete a calculation trial in one attempt because of the influence of the strain of surrounding elements.

Therefore, it has taken considerable time to perform simulations because of the time needed to modify the calculation model.

This article describes a method of simulating the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution and presents calculation examples. This method uses a new definition of contact and substantially shortens the time needed to run a simulation, while providing the same analytical accuracy as conventional methods.

^{1.} Introduction

^{*} 先行開発部 Advance Development Department

2. 構成部品と作用状況

Fig.1に示すように,今回,解析の対象としたのは5速ATの2-4/B(以下,湿式多板クラッチという)である.湿式多板クラッチは,Table 1に示すように,2速,4速及び5速の時に締結する.

本稿では,1-2変速時の面圧分布と温度分布について計算をおこなった.

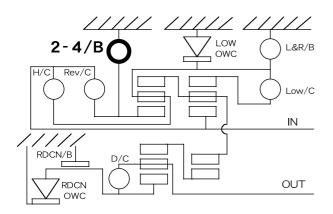


Fig. 1 Schematic diagram of the 5-speed AT

3. 当社の解析環境と解析の流れ

3.1.当社の解析環境

当社では,プリ/ポストプロセッサとしてEDS PLM Solutions製のI-DEASを,ソルバとしてHibbitt,Karlsson & Sorensen,Inc.(以下HKSという)製のABAQUSを,また,面圧分布から発熱を求めるソフトウエアとしてMicrosoft Corporation製のExcelを使用している.Excelのプログラムは,当社内製のプログラムであり,数値を入力することによって自動処理化されるようになっている.電算機はHewlett-Packard Company製UNIX機,J6000/シリーズ(2CPU)を使用している.

3.2.解析の流れ

Fig.2に示すように,第1ステップにおいて湿式多板クラッチの面圧分布を計算した.次に,第2ステップにおいて,Excelの内製プログラムを用い,摩擦材表面の発熱を計算した.最後に,第3ステップにおいて,シミュレーションモデルに,第2ステップで得られた発熱を入力し,時系列における温度分布を計算した.

面圧分布計算モデルと温度分布計算モデルは, それぞれ専用のモデルとした.

2. Constituent Parts and Operating Conditions

As shown in Fig. 1, the object of this analysis was the wet multi-disc clutch (2-4/B) of a 5-speed AT. This multi-disc clutch engages in 2nd, 4th and 5th gears, as indicated in Table 1. In this study, the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution were calculated for a 1-2 upshift.

Table 1 Clutch schedule of the 5-speed AT

Sh	ift lever	REV/C	HI/C	LOW/C	L&R/B	LOW	2-4/B	D/C	RDCN /B	RDCN OWC
	Р								О	
	R				0				О	
	N								О	
	1st			0	Δ	•			О	•
	2nd			0			0		О	
D	3rd		0	0					0	
	4th		0				0		0	
	5th		0				0	0		

- ○: Operative△: Operative in 2 or 1 range
- ●: Operative during "progressive"acceleration

REV/C: Reverse clutch HI/C: High clutch LOW/C: Low clutch L&R/B: Low & reverse brake 2-4/B: 2-4/brake

D/C: Direct clutch RDCN/B: Reduction brake LOW OWC: Low one-way clutch RDCN OWC: Reduction one-way clutch

3. JATCO's Simulation Environment and Simulation Flow

3.1. Simulation environment

At JATCO, we use EDS PLM Solutions' I-DEAS as the pre/post-processors, ABAQUS provided by Hibbitt, Karlsson & Sorensen, Inc. (HKS) as the solver and Microsoft Corp.'s Excel as the software for calculating heat generation from the contact pressure distribution. The Excel program was written in-house and is designed to process the input numerical data automatically. As computers, we use two UNIX machines (CPUs) of the J6000 Series.

3.2. Simulation flow

As outlined in Fig. 2, the contact pressure distribution of the wet multi-disc clutch was calculated as the first step. Then, our in-house Excel program was used in the second step to calculate heat generation from the surface of the friction material. Finally, as the third step, the heat generation data obtained in the second step were input into a simulation model to calculate a time history of the temperature distribution. The models used to calculate the contact pressure distribution and temperature distribution were designed specifically for their respective purpose.

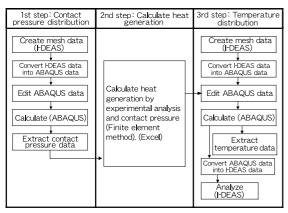


Fig. 2 Flow chart of simulation steps

4.面圧分布

4.1. 境界条件と接触定義

まず,湿式多板クラッチ周辺を連続体要素にてモデリングした.次に,湿式多板クラッチ締結時におけるピストン室の油圧とピストン受圧面積から計算したピストン押し力,及びスプリング反力を境界条件にした.

接触の関係についてFig.3に示す,太線部分がマスタ面であり,太線点線部分がスレーブ面である.(1)リテーニングプレート(以下RET_Pという)と,ドライブプレート(以下DRIVE_Pという),

- (2)DRIVE_P1から3と,ドリブンプレート(以下 DRIVEN Pという)から3,
- (3) DRIVEN_P3と, DRIVEN_P4,
- (4)DRIVEN_P4と, ピストンは,

接触関係にあるので,硬い部材側をマスタ面,部材側をスレーブ面とし,マスタとスレーブの関係から接触定義をした.例えば,Fig.3のG1_MASTERとG2_SLAVEという名前のグループが,接触関係にある.

接触面には、微小すべりを定義し、SMALL SLIDING機能により、計算を収束し易くした。

4.2.計算結果

Fig.4に,DRIVEN_P3とDRIVE_P3間の面圧分布について従来の手法と新しい手法の結果を示し、Fig.5に,締結時における湿式多板クラッチの変形の様子を示す.新旧の解析方法で,面圧分布解析にかかった時間をFig.6に示す.

従来の手法では、周辺要素の歪の影響を受け、かならずしも1回目の計算トライアルで計算が終了せず、モデルの修正や再計算に約3時間かかっていた. しかし、新しい手法ではモデルの修正なしに、ほぼ1回目の計算トライアルで計算を終了させることができた.

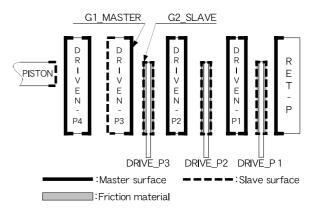


Fig. 3 Definition of contact in the simulation model

4. Contact Pressure Distribution

4.1. Boundary conditions and definition of contact

The parts around the wet multi-disc clutch were first modeled using continuous elements. Next, the piston loading force and spring reaction force at the moment of wet multi-disc clutch engagement were calculated from the hydraulic pressure in the piston chamber and the piston area subjected to pressure, and those values were adopted as the boundary conditions.

The contact relationships are shown in Fig. 3. The boldface portions are the master surfaces and the dashed-line portions are the slave surfaces. The contact relationships are as follows:

- (1) The retaining plate (RET_P) and drive plate (DRIVE_P)
- (2) DRIVE P1 to P3 and DRIVEN P1 to P3
- (3) DRIVEN P3 and DRIVEN P4
- (4) DRIVEN_P4 and the piston

Accordingly, contact was defined from the relationships between the master and slave surfaces, using hard materials for the former surfaces and soft materials for the latter surfaces. For example, the surfaces denoted as G1_MASTER and G2_SLAVE in Fig. 3 are in contact. A small sliding function was used to make the calculations converge readily by defining a small amount of sliding at the contact surfaces.

4.2. Calculation results

Figure 4 compares the contact pressure distribution calculated between DRIVEN_P3 and DRIVE_P3 using the conventional method and the new method. Figure 5 shows the condition of wet multi-disc clutch deformation during engagement. Figure 6 shows the time required to analyze the contact pressure distribution with each method.

With the conventional method, the calculation trial was not always completed in one attempt because of the influence of the strain of surrounding elements. It took approximately three hours to modify the model and rerun the calculation. In contrast, with the new method, the calculation trial was nearly always completed in the first attempt without modifying the calculation model.

モデリングの時間と計算時間は,約2時間であり,新しい手法と従来の手法では変わらなかった. 結果,以下のことがわかった.

- (1)新しい手法では、従来の手法と同じ精度で計算ができる.
- (2)新しい手法では,従来の手法に対して,解析モデルの修正時間と再計算の時間が短縮でき,大幅な解析時間の削減ができる.

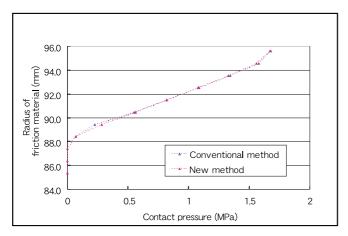


Fig. 4 Contact pressure distribution

- The combined time for modeling and running the calculations was approximately two hours with both the conventional and new methods. Thus there was no difference between them in that respect. The results made clear the following points.
- (1) The new method provides the same level of calculation accuracy as the conventional method.
- (2) The new method shortens the time needed to modify the calculation model and rerun the calculations, enabling the simulation time to be reduced substantially.

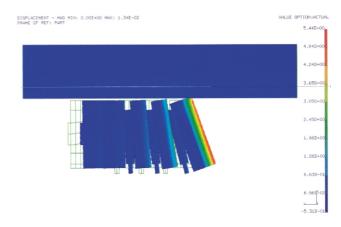


Fig. 5 Displacement and stress

	Modeling	Calculation	Modify model & calculat again
Conventional method	about 120 min	19 sec	about 180 min
New method	about 120 min	19 sec	almost nothing

Fig. 6 Modeling and calculation time

5.発熱の計算

当社オリジナルのExcelのプログラムを用いて, 実験解析で求めた発熱率と,面圧分布で求めた摩 擦材の接触面圧の結果をもとに,摩擦材表面の各 節点における最大発熱率を求めた.

6.温度分布

6.1.有限要素モデルと境界条件

6.1.1.有限要素モデルの概略

湿式多板クラッチを,熱を伝達する連続体要素にてモデリングした.モデルは計算の精度をあげるために微小な正四角形の要素とした.温度分布の計算に用いたモデルは,面圧分布で使用したモデルに対して,緻密なモデルとした.

5. Calculation of Heat Generation

Using our original in-house Excel program, the maximum heat generation rate at each node of the friction material surface was found based on the heat generation rate determined in the experimental analysis and the friction material contact pressure calculated from the contact pressure distribution.

6. Temperature Distribution

6.1. FEA model and boundary conditions

6.1.1. Overview of FEA model

The wet multi-disc clutch was modeled using continuous elements that transmitted heat. The model was composed of minute square elements in order to enhance the accuracy of the calculations. Compared with the model used in calculating the contact pressure distribution, the model used in the calculation of the temperature distribution was finer.

Automatic Transmission Fluid(以下ATFという)に接する部位には,熱流束(Heat flux)を入力し,熱エネルギの移動を定義した.摩擦材は断熱材とした.

6.1.2.相互作用2節点間熱伝達要素(DGAP要素)

DGAP要素は2節点間をつなぐ要素である.DRI VEN_P3からDRIVEN_P4間をDGAP要素でモデリングした.DGAP要素は,ABAQUSバージョン6から新設された要素である.従来は熱を伝達するような仮想的な要素にてモデリングしていたが,DGAP要素の設定により,仮想的な要素はサポートされなくなった.

DRIVEN_P3とDRIVEN_P4間は,極めて薄いATF の膜が介在し,熱伝達の抵抗が存在するため,A B A Q U S イン プットファイルの * G A P CONDUCTAN CE^3 に熱伝達率を与えた.更に,熱伝達率の単位は $W(m^2 \cdot K)$ であり(Wは単位時間あたりに伝わる熱量, m^2 は面積,Kは絶対温度),それぞれのDGAP要素に対応する面積を入力する必要があるため,ABAQUSインプットファイルの*GAP³)に面積情報を与えた.

6.1.3. 伝熱要素

DRIVE_Pの摩擦材とDRIVEN_PもしくはRET_P間は,発熱と熱伝達の両者が表現できる伝熱要素を用いて結合した,時系列の温度分布が計算できるように「5.発熱の計算」で計算した各節点の発熱データに,時間変化機能を追加した.

6.1.4. 增分回数

雰囲気温度を120 とし,締結開始から1秒間を, 増分回数20回で計算した.

6.2.計算結果

Fig.7に新しい手法で最大温度に達した時の温度 分布図を示す.Fig.8には温度差が顕著に表れる DRIVEN_P1の表面と中央部の代表点を示す.Fig.9 には計算結果を示し,時々刻々の温度変化を従来 の計算方法と比較した.

新しい手法は、従来の手法に比べ、発熱の立ち あがりに僅かな遅れがあるものの、ピーク温度は 変わらず、ほぼ同じ精度で計算ができることがわ かった.計算時間とモデリング時間は、従来の手 法と新しい手法では変わらなかった. Heat flux was input at the places in contact with the automatic transmission fluid (ATF) in order to define the transfer of thermal energy. Heat insulation material was used for the friction material.

6.1.2. DGAP element for heat transfer between two interacting nodes

The DGAP element serves to connect two nodes. This element was used to model contact between DRIVEN_P3 and DRIVEN_P4. The DGAP element was newly provided in Ver. 6.0 of ABAQUS. Previously, modeling was done with a hypothetical element for heat transfer, but with the newly established DGAP element, it is no longer necessary to support a hypothetical element.

A very thin ATF film is present between DRIVEN_P3 and DRIVEN_P4 and there is resistance to the transfer of heat, so a heat transfer coefficient was applied to the *GAP CONDUCTANCE⁽³⁾ in the ABAQUS input file. Moreover, area information was applied to the *GAP⁽³⁾ in the ABAQUS input file because it is necessary to enter area data for each DGAP element. The unit for the heat transfer coefficient is W/(m² x K), where W is the amount of heat transferred per unit time, m² is the area and K is the absolute temperature.

6.1.3. Heat transfer element

The friction materials of DRIVE_P and DRIVEN_P or RET_P were coupled by a heat transfer element capable of expressing both heat generation and heat transfer. A function for time-related change was added to the heat generation data calculated at each node in Section 5 above to facilitate a time-history calculation of the temperature distribution.

6.1.4. Number of increments

The ambient temperature was set at 120 $\,$, and the temperature distribution was calculated twenty times in one-second increments from the onset of clutch engagement.

6.2. Calculated results

Figure 7 shows the temperature distribution obtained with the new method at the time the temperature reached its maximum. Figure 8 shows typical points on the surface and in the center of DRIVEN_P1 where marked temperature differences occurred. The calculated results are shown in Fig. 9, where the constantly changing temperature is compared with the results obtained with the conventional method.

The onset of heat generation shows a slight delay with the new method compared with the conventional method, but no difference is seen for the peak temperature, clearly indicating that the new method provides virtually the same level of calculation accuracy. The calculation time and modeling time are the same for both the conventional and new methods.

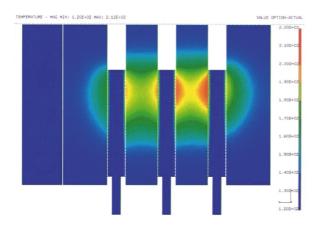


Fig. 7 Temperature distribution

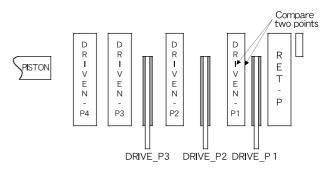


Fig. 8 Calculated heat transfer points

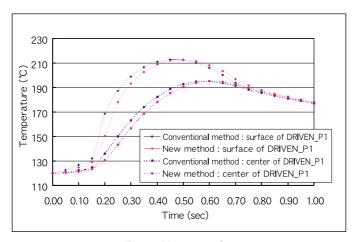


Fig. 9 Heat transfer

7. まとめ

従来の手法と新しい手法を比較すると,面圧分 布解析では,

- (1)新しい手法では,従来の手法と同じ精度で計算 ができる.
- (2)新しい手法では,従来の手法に対して,解析モ デルの修正時間及び再計算の時間が短縮でき, 大幅な解析時間の削減ができる.

また,温度分布解析では,

- (3)新しい手法は、従来の手法に比べ、発熱の立ち あがりに僅かな遅れがあるものの、ピーク温度 は変わらず,ほぼ同じ精度で計算ができる.
- (4)解析時間については同等である.

8.謝辞

本解析手法開発にあたり, HKS日本支社をはじ め,多数の皆様に多大のご指導ご協力を頂きまし た.ここに深く感謝いたします.

7. Conclusions

A comparison of the conventional and new methods with respect to a simulation of the contact pressure distribution shows that:

- (1) The new method provides the same degree of calculation accuracy as the conventional method.
- (2) The new method substantially shortens the simulation time compared with the previous method because it reduces the time needed for modifying the simulation model and running the calculations again. With respect to a simulation of the temperature

distribution:

- (3) The new method provides virtually the same level of calculation accuracy as the conventional method. with the peak temperature showing no difference, although the onset of heat generation shows a slight delay with the new method.
- (4) The simulation time is the same for both methods.

8. Acknowledgments

The author would like to thank many individuals, especially various people at the Japan subsidiary of Hibbitt, Karlsson & Sorensen, Inc., for their valuable advice and cooperation in connection with the development of this new simulation method.

参考文献

- 1)加藤芳章,赤坂量康,山崎努,森泰志:自動変速機 用湿式クラッチとバンドブレーキの温度測定,トライボロジスト,第41巻,第4号,pp.66-73(1996)
- 2)大谷親,高谷松文:接触面顕微鏡による湿式ペーパ摩擦材の静摩擦および動摩擦下での接触状態の微視的観察,千葉工業大学付属研究所研究報告, Vol.1999, pp. 1-8(2000)
- 3) ABAQUS/Standard User's Manual Version6.2 , Hibbitt , Karlsson & Sorensen , Inc.

References

- (1) Y. Kato, K. Akasaka, T. Yamazaki and Y. Mori, "Measurement of Wet Clutch and Band Brake Temperatures of an Automatic Transmission," Tribologist, Vol. 41, No. 4, pp. 66-73, 1996 (in Japanese).
- (2) S. Ohtani and M. Takaya, "Microscopic Observation of Contact Conditions of Wet Paper Friction Materials under Static and Dynamic Friction using a Contact Surface Microscope," Technical Review of Chiba Institute of Technology Laboratories, Vol. 1999, pp. 1-8, 2000 (in Japanese).
- (3) ABAQUS/Standard User's Manual Version 6.2, Hibbitt, Karlsson & Sorensen, Inc.

Author



Yasushi YABE

浸炭歯車のピッチング強度に及ぼす潤滑油の影響

The Influence of ATF on the Pitting Fatigue Strength of Carburized Gears

陳 勇*

Yong CHEN

抄 録 近年,乗用車用自動変速機は低速でのスリップロックアップ制御方式の採用が拡大されるとともに,自動変速機油の金属摩擦係数が大きくなる傾向にあり,自動変速機用歯車の使用環境はますます厳しくなってきている.本報告では3種類の自動変速機油を用いて,2種類の歯面強化法により製作した浸炭はすば歯車による歯車のピッチング疲労試験を行い,歯面ピッチング強度に及ぼす自動変速機油油種の影響に関する考察と共にリン酸マンガン皮膜処理の効果を明らかにした.

Summary Automatic transmission fluids (ATFs) designed for improved control performance are being used more widely today, but they also have properties that are undesirable for gear lubrication, such as a higher metal-to-metal friction coefficient. Tooth surface failures of carburized gears owing to contact fatigue are increasing for that reason. In this study, pitting fatigue strength tests were conducted on carburized gears whose tooth surfaces had been strengthened by two different methods. Three kinds of ATF were used to investigate differences in the development of gear pitting due to the different properties of the lubricants.

1. はじめに

近年,乗用車用エンジンの高出力化が著しく進 展すると同時に自動変速機(以下ATと略記)搭載車 の燃費向上と快適性を図るためにATの軽量小型化, 多段化,電子制御の高度化が求められている.燃 費向上策として、ロックアップ機構の改良、電子 制御による低速でのスリップ制御ロックアップ方 式の採用が拡大され(1),このような技術進歩などに 伴い,自動変速機油(以下ATFと略記, Automatic Transmission Fluid)についても新油種を開発してい る.ATの作動油は歯車の潤滑にも使用されている. ATFにおいては,作動流体としての粘度特性,酸化 安定性および摩擦特性の向上など、ATFの摩擦係数 を高めることはクラッチの伝達トルク容量が大き くなり,ATの小型軽量化につながるため,摩擦係 数が大きくなる傾向にあり(2×3),歯車の潤滑に対し ては好ましくない性状となる(4×5). 上記の理由によ り自動変速機用歯車の使用環境はますます厳しく なってきている.

ATに用いられる浸炭焼入れ歯車のような表面硬化歯車は,従来ピッチングが発生し難く,歯元の曲げ強度の問題が主であったが(6×7),ショットピーニング技術の進歩などにより,歯元の曲げ疲労強度が著しく向上し,近年では表面硬化歯車でも面圧疲労が歯車の寿命を支配する場合も増えてきた(8).

* 第二構造部品設計部 Structural Component Design Department No. 2

1. Introduction

The power output of passenger car engines has risen markedly in recent years. At the same time, there have been strong demands to reduce the size and weight of automatic transmissions (ATs), add more gear ranges and enhance their electronic control systems in order to improve the fuel economy and driving comfort of cars fitted with ATs. Measures taken to improve fuel economy include improvement of the lockup clutch and expanded use of slip lockup control at low speeds by means of electronic control. (1) Accompanying these and other technological advances, new types of lubricants have also been developed for use as automatic transmission fluids (ATFs). The working fluid of an AT also serves to lubricate the transmission gears. Measures have been taken to improve the viscosity characteristic, oxidation stability, friction characteristic and other properties of ATFs as a working fluid. Raising the friction coefficient of an ATF increases the torque transmission capacity of the clutches, enabling the size and weight of an AT to be reduced. For this reason, there has been a tendency to increase the friction coefficient, (2),(3) but that results in undesirable properties with respect to gear lubrication. (4),(5) These factors are creating an increasingly severe usage environment for AT gears.

Surface hardened gears used in ATs, including carburized and quenched ones, have traditionally been strongly resistant to pitting. Their main issue has been the bending strength of the dedendum. (6)(7) As a result of advances in shot peening and other hardening techniques, the bending fatigue strength of the dedendum has been markedly improved. In recent years, therefore, contact fatigue has increasingly become the factor governing the service life of surface hardened gears. (8)

歯車の面圧強度は、主に表面硬さや歯面近傍の硬度と、歯面粗さと運転中に形成される潤滑油の油膜厚さとの比によって決められるが、これらの関係により歯車の面圧強度には潤滑油の性状が大きく影響するので、歯車のピッチング強度面からATF影響の究明が求められている。そこで本報告では、3種類のATFと、浸炭はすば歯車の表面処理(リン酸マンガン処理)の有無と組み合わせ、歯車のピッチング疲労試験を行い、歯面ピッチング強度に及ぼすATF油種と歯面処理の影響に関する考察を行った。

2. ATFの要求特性

"ATFはATの血液である", ATの性能に最も影響を与える因子であると皆が認めている. ATFへの要求特性は数多く,自動車用潤滑油の中で最も要求レベルの高いものの一つである. ATの機構要素を円滑に作動させるため, ATFは次の役割を要求されている.

- (1)動力伝達媒体(トルクコンバ-タ)
- (2)変速制御(油圧制御,快適・操作性)
- (3)潤滑作用(歯車,軸受などの潤滑)
- (4)摩擦特性(摩擦材の潤滑,適正摩擦特性の維持, スリップロックアップ制御)

3. 実験方法

3.1. 実験に使用したATF

実験には,ATFを3種類(A油,B油,C油)用いた.使用したATFの一般的な性状をTable 1に示す.ATFの金属間摩擦係数は低速すべり摩擦試験機(LFW-1:Falex Block on Ring Friction and Wear test Machine)で測定した.摩擦試験装置の概略はFig. 1に示す.Fig. 2は,3種類のATFの摩擦係数が滑り率とともにどのように変化するかを示す.摩擦係数の測定条件はATF油温110 にて面圧657MPaで測定した.

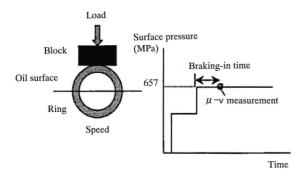


Fig. 1 Outline of experimental method LFW-1

Gear contact strength can mainly be determined as a ratio of the surface hardness and hardness near the tooth surface to the surface roughness and lubricant film thickness that forms during operation. Because of these relationships, the properties of the lubricant have a large impact on the contact strength of AT gears, making it necessary to clarify the influence of the ATF on the pitting fatigue strength of the gears. Toward that end, we conducted pitting fatigue strength tests on carburized helical gears with and without a surface treatment of manganese phosphating and combined with three kinds of ATF. The purpose was to examine the influence of the ATF properties and the tooth surface treatment on the pitting fatigue strength of the tooth surface.

2. Properties Required of ATFs

Everyone recognizes that the ATF is the factor that has the greatest influence on AT performance, as the fluid is often likened to the "blood of an AT." There are many properties required of ATFs, and the necessary levels of performance are among the highest of all automotive lubricants. The following capabilities are required of an ATF to enable the structural elements of an AT to operate smoothly:

- (1) power transmission medium (torque converter),
- (2) shift control (hydraulic pressure control, driving ease and comfort),
- (3) lubricating action (lubrication of gears, bearings, etc.), and
- (4) friction characteristics (lubrication of friction materials, maintenance of suitable friction characteristics and slip lookup control).

3. Experimental Procedure

3.1. Test ATFs

Three types of ATF (ATF-A, -B and -C) were used in the experiments. The typical properties of these ATFs are given in Table 1. The metal-to-metal (M/M) friction coefficient of the ATFs was measured with a Falex block-on-ring friction and wear test machine (LFW-1). An outline of the LFW-1 apparatus is shown in Fig. 1. Figure 2 shows the change in the friction coefficient of the three ATFs as a function of the slip factor. The friction coefficient was measured under conditions of an ATF temperature of 110 and contact pressure of 657 MPa.

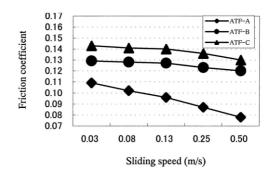


Fig. 2 $\,\mu$ -V characteristics between metal components

Table 1 Typical properties of test ATFs

	ATF-A	ATF-B	ATF-C
Density g/cm³ @15℃	0.869	0.867	0.857
Kinematic viscosity mm ² /s @100°C	7.41	7.55	7.34
Average friction coefficient	0.102	0.128	0.137

3.2. 試験装置

実験に使用した動力循環式歯車試験機の概略をFig. 3に示す.試験機は大別して(1)駆動及び伝導歯車装置(2)負荷装置(3)潤滑ユニット(4)計測装置から構成されている.主駆動装置として,インバータモーダ(55KW)が設けられている.負荷は、全体のバネ系を,ヘリカルスプライン部の摺動により,運転中に捩ることにより与える.潤滑ユニットは,試験歯車用潤滑油タンクと伝導機構用潤滑タンクに分かれており,制御装置はPC制御による自動運転と操作盤でのマニュアル運転が切り替え可能となっている.計測データの取り込みは入力回転数,入力トルク値,供試体振動加速度値,潤滑油温度,潤滑油流量,積算回転数などである.

3.3. 試験歯車

実験に用いた歯車の諸元はTable2に示す.材料は クロム鋼(SCr420H)とクロムモリブデン鋼 (SCM818H 2鋼種を用いた.SCM818Hは,近年に 開発された高強度歯車用鋼である.試験歯車は, 駆動ギヤにはシェービング仕上げ加工後浸炭焼入 れ処理をしたものと,浸炭焼入れ後歯面を研削し てリン酸マンガン被膜処理をしたものを用いた. 従動ギヤにはシェービング加工後浸炭焼入れ処理 をしたもののみである.浸炭焼入れ歯表面硬さは HRC58以上である.一般に潤滑油の種類はほとん ど曲げの応力に影響を及ばさないと考えられる(9). 本実験は,歯面疲労実験中の歯の折損を防止する ともに歯面荒れを抑える目的として、すべての試 験歯車に浸炭焼入れ熱処理後,2段ショットピーニ ングを施している.ショットピーニングの投射条 件は,1段目のショットピーニングのアークハイト が arc-height)約1.0mmA, 2段目のショットピーニ ングのアークハイトが約0.3mmNである.1段目シ ョットピーニング後と2段ショットピーニング後 の歯底部の残留応力分布をFig.4に示す.2段ショッ トは,1段ショットと比較して表面近傍の残留応力 が高く、ピークが歯表面近くに移動している、ま た,1段目のハードショットピーニングにより表面 粗さは悪化するが,2段目のショットピーニングを 施すことによってほぼ浸炭のままと同程度まで表 面粗さが向上している.

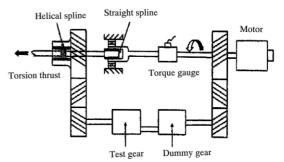


Fig. 3 Power circulation-type gear test machine

3.2. Test equipment

A schematic of the power circulation-type gear test machine used in the experiments is shown in Fig. 3. This test machine mainly consists of (1) a power source and apparatus for transmitting driving force to the gears, (2) a loading device, (3) a lubrication unit and (4) a measuring device. A 55-kW inverter motor is used as the main power source. The sliding of the helical spline twists the overall spring system to apply the load during the test. The lubrication unit is divided between the lubricant tank for the test gear and the lubricant tank for the mechanism that transmits the driving force. The control unit can be switched between automatic operation under PC control and manual operation from the control panel. The measured data that are acquired include the input speed, input torque, vibration acceleration of the test gear, lubricant temperature, lubricant flow rate and integrated speed.

3.3. Test gears

The specifications of the test gears used in the experiments are given in Table 2. The gears were made of two types of material, chromium steel (SCr420H) and chromium-molybdenum steel (SCM818H). The latter is a high-strength gear steel that has been developed in recent years. Two types of drive gears were used as test gears. One type was carburized and quenched after being shaved, and for the other type the tooth surface was ground and coated with manganese phosphate after being carburized and quenched. The driven gears were only carburized and quenched following shaving. The tooth surface hardness of the carburized and quenched gears was greater than HRC58. It is generally considered that bending stress is virtually unaffected by the type of lubricant used. (9) All the test gears were shot peened twice following carburizing and quenching in order to prevent tooth damage during the tooth surface fatigue strength test and to inhibit tooth surface roughness. The projection conditions for shot peening were an arc height of approximately 1.0 mmA in the first shot peening and approximately 0.3 mmN in the second shot peening.

Figure 4 shows the distribution of residual stress at the tooth bottom following the first and second shot peenings. The results indicate that residual stress near the surface was higher after the second than after the first shot peening and that the peak shifted closer to the surface. In addition, surface roughness worsened after the first hard shot peening, but it was improved again to nearly the same level as that of the as-carburized gears by the application of the second shot peening process.

Table 2 Specifications of test gears

Specifications	Drive Gear	Driven Gear		
Normal module (mm)	2.86			
Normal pressure angle (deg)	17.5			
Helix angle (deg)	26.8			
Number of teeth	23	66		
Pitch circle diameter (mm)	73.6	211.4		
Tooth width (mm)	20			

粒界酸化層が低減することも曲げ疲労強度向上の要因になっているものと考えられる(7). Fig. 5は,(a)リン酸マンガン被膜処理(b)シェービング仕上げ後の浸炭焼き入れ処理(c)浸炭焼き入れ処理後の2段ショットピーニングを施した試験歯車の歯形方向の歯面粗さを示す.

3.4. 実験方法

実験では、初めに慣らし運転により、通常運転状態の荷重を掛ける、駆動歯車の回転速度は1,500rpm、ATF温度は120±2 で歯車接触部上方から2.5 1/minの割合で強制給油した。また、歯面損傷の発生を検知するため、歯車支持軸の軸受上部に加速度センサを用いた。試験歯車のピッチング寿命を判定するため、適当な間隔で試験機の運転を停止し、ピッチング発生の有無の観察とピッチング面積率(歯当たり面積に対するピッチング面積の割合)を測定する。また、実験後には、歯元の摩耗量を測定した。

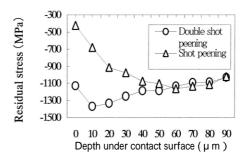


Fig. 4 Distribution of residual stress at tooth bottom

It is thought that reduction of the intergranular oxidation layer is also one factor that improves bending fatigue strength. Figure 5 shows the surface roughness along the tooth profile of the test gears after (a) manganese phosphating, (b) shaving followed by carburizing and quenching and (c) carburizing and quenching followed by double shot peening.

3.4. Test method

In the tests, the gears were subjected to loading under normal operating conditions by first breaking them in. The drive gear was operated at a speed of 1,500 rpm and an ATF temperature of 120 ± 2 . Forced lubrication was applied from above the gear mesh region at a rate of 2.5 L/min. An acceleration sensor was used above the bearing of the shaft supporting the gear to detect tooth surface damage. To determine the pitting fatigue life of the test gears, the gear test machine was stopped at suitable intervals to allow observation of the development of pitting and measurement of the pitting area rate (i.e., the ratio of the pitting area to the total tooth contact area). Following the test, the amount of dedendum wear was also measured.

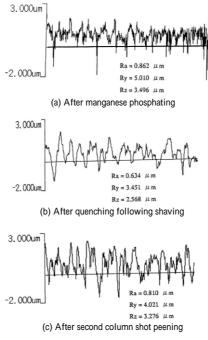
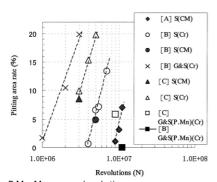


Fig. 5 Surface roughness of gear tooth



P.Mn: Manganese phosphating S: Shaving, G: Grinding, Cr: Cr420H, CM: SCM818H

Fig. 6 Change in pitting area rate

4.実験結果及び考察

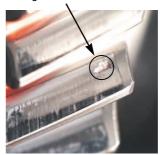
4.1. 各種ATFのピッチング寿命

Fig.6は3種類のATFで,歯面の最大接触圧力をPmax=1,730MPaと設定して試験した結果である.横軸は噛合い回数,縦軸は各段階でのピッチング面積率を示す.図のように,ATF-C,B,Aの順にピッチング寿命は長く,ATF-AはBに対してピッチング面積率約7%の点で比較すると,寿命が約2倍に改善していることがわかる.また,浸炭焼き入れ後にリン酸マンガン被膜処理をすると,歯面の疲労寿命が3倍以上になっており,ピッチング寿命の改善効果が確認できた.

本実験ではピッチングが小歯車(駆動歯車)のみに発生し、Fig.7に示すような歯面状況となった、ピッチングの初期段階では、歯底近傍の噛合い開始部の歯表面から小さなピット(微小剥離)が生じる、負荷繰り返し数の増大に伴い、そのピットは歯幅方向に拡大した後、その直上から歯先方向に進展し、そこから小片が剥離に至っており、すべりの方向と対応している。

実験結果より、歯面の損傷はATFに大きく影響されることが判った.Table 1に示すATFの主な物性値から見れば各種ATFの動粘度はほぼ同じ値であるが、金属摩擦係数にはやや大きな差異がある.従って、摩擦係数とピッチング寿命とは密接に関連を持っていて、摩擦係数が低くなるとと歯面ピッチングが発生し難くなる傾向にあることが摩擦したが厚擦係数が大きい方が摩擦をは高くなり、接触が大きく、歯温度は高くなり、接触が大きく、右TFの影響も考慮してピッチング寿命を評価するには、動粘度だけでなく、摩擦係数に評価するには、動粘度だけでなく、摩擦係数に評価する必要があると考える.

Pitting area 6.6 mm²





Pitting area 11.7mm²

3 x 106 Revolutions, ATF- C

Fig. 7 Pitting condition after testing

4. Experimental Results and Discussion

4.1. Pitting fatigue life with each ATF

Figure 6 shows the results obtained for the three types of ATF when the tooth surface was subjected to maximum contact pressure of P_{max} = 1,730 MPa. The horizontal axis indicates the meshing cycles, and the vertical axis shows the pitting area rate at each stage of the test. As seen in the figure, pitting fatigue life increased in the order of ATF-C, -B and -A. A comparison at a pitting area rate of 7% indicates that ATF-A improved pitting fatigue life by nearly twofold compared with ATF-B. Additionally, when manganese phosphating was applied following carburizing and quenching, gear surface fatigue life was improved by more than threefold, thereby confirming the effect on improving pitting fatigue life.

Pitting occurred in these tests only on the smaller drive gear, and the condition of the tooth surface is shown in Fig. 7. In the initial stage of pitting, small pits (microflaking) developed on the tooth surface in the mesh onset area near the tooth bottom. As the number of load cycles increased, the pits expanded across the face width and then progressed straight down toward the tip, resulting in the flaking of small fragments there that coincided with the direction of slipping.

It was concluded from the test results that the ATF greatly affected tooth surface damage. The major ATF properties given in Table 1 indicate that the test ATFs had virtually the same kinematic viscosity, but their M/M friction coefficient differed considerably. Accordingly, it was concluded that the friction coefficient was closely related to pitting fatigue life and that lowering the friction coefficient tended to reduce the likelihood of tooth surface pitting. This is attributed to the following reason. With a higher friction coefficient, it is thought that friction force produces more heat, resulting in a higher surface temperature, which shortens pitting fatigue life even at the same level of contact stress. Consequently, pitting fatigue life must be assessed in a comprehensive evaluation that also takes into account the influence of the ATF. It is necessary to evaluate the rise in the tooth surface temperature, lubricant film thickness and other factors, taking friction characteristics into account as well, in addition to kinematic viscosity.

4.2. 試験歯車の歯元摩耗

Fig. 8は各種ATFにおいて試験した歯車歯元の摩耗量と噛合い回数の関係を示す.歯面の摩耗は主に歯元近傍で発生し、摩耗量は噛合い回数とともに増加している。ATFの種類は摩耗量に影響しており、ピッチング寿命の長い歯車の歯元摩耗量は比較的大きいことがわかる.ATF-Aを使用すると、摩耗がなじみとして機能し、負荷能力を向上させているのであると思われる.ATF-Cでは、歯面が摩耗しにくいので、歯面に小さなピットが生じると局部に荷重が集中し、その部分の応力が疲労限以上となり、ピット前端の亀裂が急速に伝播し、大きなピットの成長の要因になったと考えられる.

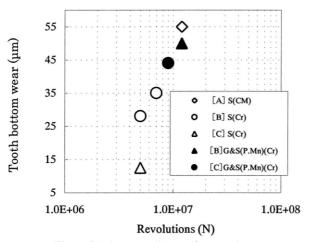


Fig. 8 Pitting condition after testing

4.3. 試験後の歯面残留応力

Fig. 9は,実験後の試験歯車(駆動側の小歯車)の 噛合い歯面と非噛合い歯面の残留応力を示す.X 線回析法を用いて歯幅中央の歯先近傍を測定した 結果である.非噛合い歯面の残留応力が噛合い歯 面に比べ高いことより、噛合い歯面の摩擦熱に伴 う歯表面残留応力の減衰が大きいことが推測され る.歯面強度には,接触歯面の温度が大きな影響 を及ぼすことが認められる(10).また,ATにおいて はATFの温度は常用域にて80 以上である.本研究 では, AGMA(アメリカ歯車工業会)で提案されて いる歯面接触点の瞬時温度 (Flash温度Tf)¹¹¹を計算 した .接触面では最大瞬間温度 Tfが約140 である. したがってATの歯車の歯面は,適正潤滑下にお いても,通常の焼戻し温度(130 ~ 200)より高 い約260 にまで上昇すると考えられている.一般 には歯面強度として300 程度の温度域における強 度を維持させる必要がある.

4.2. Dedendum wear of test gears

Figure 8 shows the dedendum wear measured for the test gears with each ATF in relation to the meshing cycles. Tooth surface wear mainly occurred near the dedendum, and the amount of wear increased as the number of meshing cycles increased. The ATF type used influenced the wear level. The results indicate that the gears with a long pitting fatigue life suffered relatively large dedendum wear. It is thought that when ATF-A was used, wear had a breaking-in effect that improved the load capacity. With ATF-C, because the tooth surface was resistant to wear, the load tended to concentrate locally when small pits developed in the tooth surface. Once stress at those points exceeded the fatigue limit, cracks at the front edge of the pits propagated quickly and presumably caused the growth of large pits.

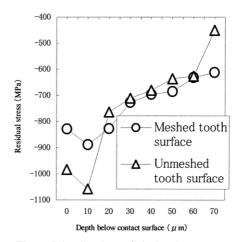


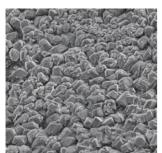
Fig. 9 Distribution of dedendum stress

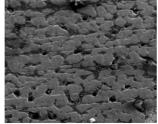
4.3. Residual stress at tooth surface following testing

Figure 9 shows the residual stress measured for the meshed and unmeshed tooth surfaces of the smaller drive gear following testing. These results were measured by xray diffraction analysis near the tip at the center of the face width. Because the residual stress of the unmeshed tooth surface was higher than that of the meshed tooth surface, it is assumed that surface residual stress was more attenuated by the friction heat of the meshed tooth surface. It is known that the temperature of contacting tooth surfaces substantially affects tooth surface strength. (10) In addition, the ATF temperature in an AT is in the range of normal use. In this research, the flash temperature Tf at the tooth surface contact point was calculated, as proposed by the American Gear Manufacturers Association (AGMA). (11) The highest flash temperature Tf at the contact surface was approximately 140 . Accordingly, it is thought that the tooth surface temperature of AT gears rises as high as approximately 260 even under proper lubrication, which is higher than the ordinary tempering temperature (130 -200). In general, it is necessary to maintain tooth surface strength in a temperature range of around 300

4.4. リン酸マンガン被膜効果

Fig.10は,リン酸マンガン処理した歯車であり,ATF-Bでの負荷運転前後の歯面を,走査型電子顕微鏡で観察した結果である.被膜処理した歯面は,黒色無光沢を呈している.膜厚は約15μmであり,加工痕が認められず平滑な表面形状になっていることがわかる.ATF-C,Bとも,被膜処理した歯車対の耐ピッチング寿命は大きく向上することが確認できた.これらの浸漬法により,歯車表面に対りができた.これらの浸漬法により,歯車表面に対いりをマンガン系の皮膜を生成し,金属同士の直接接触を防止しながら犠牲的に摩耗して,よりフラットな摺動表面を創生する(初期なじみ効果).この効果によりフリクションが低減し,無処理材に比較して摩擦熱の発生を抑えることができると考えられる(12×13).





PMn coating before testing

PMn coating after testing

Fig. 10 Manganese phosphate coating

5. 実験後の歯面形状(3次元)に対する解析

Fig. 11は試験歯車に対して,実験後の歯面上の歯 形・歯筋の相対誤差曲線と入力荷重により任意の 噛合い点でのヘルツ応力を求めて作用平面上に等 高線表示した図である.実験後に面圧は相対曲率 半径の小さい駆動小歯車の歯元側で局部的に高く なっていることがわかる、ギヤの歯元では、ころ がり方向(噛合い接触点)とすべり方向(相手の面に よってこすられる方向)が逆方向になる,ピッチン グが歯元部で始まるのは、このためと考えられる(14). Fig. 12はFig. 11と同じ試験歯車での実験後の歯面上 の歯形・歯筋の相対誤差曲線と入力荷重により歯車 作用平面全体のFlash温度上昇の分布を等高線表示 したものである. すべり速度や面圧の大きい歯先と 歯元の歯面で歯面温度は高くなっている.歯車では 噛合時の温度上昇に対する軟化抵抗を考慮する必要 があると考えられる(15).

4.4. Effect of manganese phosphating

Figure 10 shows scanning electron microscope observations of the tooth surfaces of manganese phosphate coated gears before and after running a fatigue loading test with ATF-B. The coated tooth surface was black in color with a non-glossy appearance. The coating was approximately 15 µm thick, and the surface morphology was smooth without any evidence of grinding marks. It was confirmed that the pitting fatigue life of gear pairs coated with manganese phosphate was greatly improved with both ATF-C and ATF-B. This immersion process formed a thin film of manganese phosphate on the gear surface, which wore sacrificially to create an even smoother sliding surface (initial breaking-in effect) while preventing direct metal-to-metal contact. That presumably had the effect of reducing friction and inhibited the generation of friction heat compared with non-coated test gears. (12) (13)

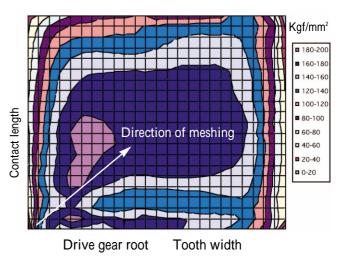


Fig. 11 Distribution of Hertzian plane pressure in a test pinion after testing

5. 3D Analysis of Tooth Surface Shape Following Testing

Following the test, the Hertzian stress of the tested gears was found at arbitrarily chosen meshing points using the relative error curves of the tooth profile/tooth trace on the tooth surface and the input load. The results are shown as contour curves on an action plane in Fig. 11. It is seen that the contact pressure after the test was locally higher at the dedendum of the smaller drive gear, which had a smaller relative radius of curvature. At the dedendum, the rolling direction (mesh contact point) and sliding direction (direction of rubbing by the mating surface) are opposite, and that is thought to be the reason why pitting begins at the dedendum. (14)

Figure 12 shows in contour curves the distribution of the flash temperature rise for the same tested gears following the test. The relative error curves of the tooth profile/tooth trace on the tooth surface and input load were used to find this distribution for the overall gear action plane. It is seen that the tooth surface temperature was higher at the tip and dedendum surfaces having a large slipping speed and contact pressure. It is inferred that softening resistance relative to the temperature rise that occurs when gear pairs mesh must be taken into account. (15)

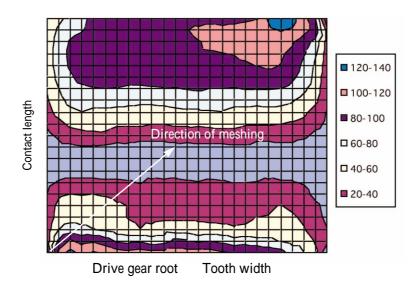


Fig. 12 Distribution of flash temperature rise in a test pinion after testing

6. 結 言

ATFと歯面の表面処理とが,浸炭歯車の疲労強度に及ぼす影響を調査し,以下の結果を得た.

- (1)摩擦係数が小さなATFは,歯面での滑りによる 発熱が少なくなって,ピッチング寿命の改善に つながることが確認された.
- (2)リン酸マンガン被膜処理を施した歯車は,歯面の表層部の固体潤滑作用による摩擦係数の減少と,相手面粗さの減少と突起の平滑化を促し,なじみ性の向上により高い耐ピッチング能力をもつことが実証された.
- (3)ATFの違いによる歯面ピッチング寿命と歯面摩 耗の関する実験結果は、歯面の摩耗量は耐久繰 り返し数と共に増加しており、ギヤのピッチン グ寿命の長い仕様は比較的に摩耗量が大きいこ とがわかる.

以上より、歯車ピッチング寿命に対するATFの影響を実験研究してきたが、ATFの添加剤などの影響については不明な点もあり、今後さらに研究調査を継続する.

参考文献

- (1) 功刀俊夫,トライボロジスト,第39卷第10号 (1994)21-26.
- (2) 松岡徹,ほか2名,三菱石油,技術資料,No.80 (1995.2),28-36.
- (3) 汐見正明,トライボロジスト,第38巻第2号, (1993),112-117.
- (4) 石川二郎,機論,59-452(1956),11.
- (5) 石橋彰,精密機械,第32卷,第5号(1966.5),336-343.

6. Conclusion

The influence of different kinds of ATF and tooth surface treatments on the fatigue strength of carburized gears was investigated, and the following results were obtained.

- (1) It was confirmed that an ATF with a lower friction coefficient leads to an improvement in pitting fatigue life because less heat is generated by slipping at the tooth surface.
- (2) It was verified that gears with a manganese phosphate coating have greater resistance to pitting, which is attributed to a lower friction coefficient due to solid lubrication at the tooth surface layer and improved affinity resulting from reduced surface roughness and smoothing of the asperities of the mating gear surface.
- (3) Test results concerning the tooth surface pitting fatigue life and wear level for different types of ATF showed that the amount of tooth surface wear increases with increasing durability test cycles. Gears having a long pitting fatigue life specification tend to incur relatively large wear.

This experimental research examined the influence of the ATF on gear pitting fatigue life, however, the effects of ATF additives and other factors are still unclear and will be the focus of continued research in the future.

References

- (1) T. Kunoki, Tribologist, Vol. 39, No. 10, 1994, 21-26.
- (2) T. Matsuoka, et al., Technical Data, Mitsubishi Oil Co., Ltd., No. 80, Feb. 1995, 28-36 (in Japanese).
- (3) M. Shiomi, Tribologist, Vol. 38, No. 2, 1993, 112-117.
- (4) J. Ishikawa, Trans. of Jpn. Soc. of Mech. Engs., 59-452, 1956, 11 (in Japanese).
- (5) A. Ishibashi, Precision Machinery, Vol. 32, No. 5, May 1966, 336-343 (in Japanese).
- (6) T. Suzuki, et al., Trans. of Jpn. Soc. of Mech. Engs.,

- (6) 鈴木智博, ほか2名,機論,C編,65-637(1999),280-286.
- (7) 平田昌邦,トライボロジスト,第41卷第1号 (1996),34-38.
- (8) 鈴木健一,出光トライボレビュ ,No12.28-33.
- (9) 秦野敦臣,ほか1名,電気製鋼,第63巻,第1号,22-32
- (10)藤田,ほか3名,機論,45-396(1979-8),945.
- (11)日本機械学会,歯車強さ設計資料(1991),76-77.
- (12)吉田誠,ほか3名,自動車技術会論文集, Vol.27,No.2(1996),125-130.
- (13)石橋彰,潤滑,第19卷,第11号(1974),809-811.
- (14)内藤武志,浸炭焼き入れの実際,日刊工業新聞社, 256-259技術,No.6,(2000),
- (15)渡辺陽一,ほか2名,自動車技術,No.6,(2000),84-89.

- Vol. C, 65-637, 1999, 280-286 (in Japanese).
- (7) M. Hirata, Tribologist, Vol. 41, No. 1, 1996, 34-38.
- (8) K. Suzuki, Idemitsu Tribology Review, No. 12, 28-32 (in Japanese).
- (9) A. Hatano, et al, Electric Steelmaking, Vol. 63, No. 1, 22-32 (in Japanese).
- (10) K. Fujita, et al., Trans. of Jpn. Soc. of Mech. Engs., 45-396, Aug. 1979, 945 (in Japanese).
- (11) Jpn. Soc. of Mech. Engs., Gear Strength Design Data, 1991, 76-77 (in Japanese).
- (12) M. Yoshida, et al., Trans. of JSAE, Vol. 27, No. 2, 1996, 125-130 (in Japanese).
- (13) A. Ishibashi, Lubrication, Vol. 19, No. 11, 1974, 809-811 (in Japanese).
- (14) T. Naito, Realities of Carburizing, Nikkan Kogyou Shimbun Co., Engineering 256-259, No. 6, 2000 (in Japanese).
- (15) Y. Watanabe, et al., Trans. of JSAE, No. 6, 2000, 84-89 (in Japanese).

Author



Yong CHEN

トロイダルCVT変速性能の特徴と技術課題への対応

Features of Toroidal CVT Shift Performance and Measures for Resolving Technical Issues

西原 康幸*

岡崎 誠*

堀尾 真隆*

手塚 晃典*

根本 勉**

Yasuyuki NISHIHARA

Makoto OKAZAKI

Masaoki HORIO

Akinori TEZUKA

Tsutomu NEMOTO

抄 録 トロイダルCVTは ,「環境に優しく」,「際立つ 走りの性能」の両立を図る将来型トランスミッションと して開発された .

本稿は,従来型トランスミッションに対するトロイダル CVT変速性能の特徴,および,トロイダルCVT特有の技 術課題への対応について紹介する. **Summary** The toroidal CVT has been developed as a future type of automatic transmission that combines environmental friendliness with extraordinary driving performance. This article describes its advantages in comparison with other automatic transmissions and the measures taken to address the particular technical issues of the toroidal CVT.

1.はじめに

近年,環境意識の高まりによる「燃料消費削減」を成立させる技術としてCVTへの関心が益々高まっている.さらに,トロイダルCVTは,従来のCVTが苦手としていた素早い変速を実現した.そのため,有段ATに比較して変速ショックが無いだけでなく,意のままに変速させることができる将来型CVTとして,発売後多くのジャーナリストからも注目されている.

本稿では、従来型トランスミッションに対する 変速性能の特徴と、トロイダルCVT特有の技術課 題への対応について紹介する.

2. 変速性能の従来型ATなどとの比較

2.1. 加速時の変速性能(Driveレンジ)

トロイダルCVTは,変速の際クラッチの締結や解除が必要ない.さらに,変速に必要とするピストン(サーボピストン)の作動長も約0.5mmと非常に小さく,油量充填が極めて短時間に完了するため,変速時間を短くできる.

そのため,加速時(アクセルペダル急踏み時)のダウンシフトでは,従来4速ATに比較してスムーズで素早い変速を実現している(Fig.1)

また,複数の変速性能マッチングパラメータを 持っており,車格にあわせたマッチングが可能で ある.

Experiment Department No. 1

Experiment Department No. 2

1. Introduction

There has been increasing interest in CVTs in recent years as a technology for reducing vehicle fuel consumption in response to heightened concern about the environment. Moreover, the toroidal CVT achieves fast ratio changes, something that was difficult for conventional CVTs to accomplish. Compared with stepped ATs, therefore, the toroidal CVT not only eliminates shift shock, it also enables drivers to shift as they please. Since it was first released, the toroidal CVT has attracted the attention of many journalists as a future form of CVTs.

This article describes the shift performance features of the toroidal CVT in comparison with conventional transmissions and discusses the measures taken to address certain technical issues characteristic of the toroidal CVT.

2. Comparison of Shift Performance with Conventional ATs

2.1. Shift performance in D range during acceleration

The toroidal CVT (T-CVT) requires no clutch engagement or release when shifting. It also shifts more quickly because the amount of servo piston travel needed to execute ratio changes is exceptionally short, approximately 0.5 mm, enabling the fluid to fill the cylinder in an extremely short period of time. As a result, the toroidal CVT can execute downshifts more quickly and smoothly than a conventional 4-speed AT, when the driver presses the accelerator pedal hard for rapid acceleration (Fig. 1).

Additionally, because it incorporates several parameters for calibrating the shift performance to match the vehicle, the toroidal CVT can be tuned according to the character of different car models.

^{*} 第一実験部

^{**} 第二実験部

- 1) 変速スピードの設定値を変更することで,なめらかな変速から僅かなラグ感はあるが,急激な加速変化を強調した変速までマッチングが可能である.(Fig. 2)
- 2) 電制スロットル制御をマッチングすることにより,アクセルを踏んでからの変速応答性を向上させることも可能である.代表例として,電制スロットル制御を廃止した場合の加速波形を示す.(Fig. 3)
- 3)アクセル急踏み時のLU解除を行わないことで, 応答性の向上と再LU後の減速感を改善することも可能である.(Fig. 4)

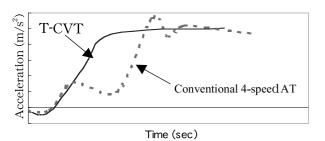


Fig. 1 Acceleration performance (1)

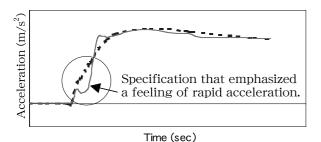


Fig. 2 Performance after calibration (1)

2.2. マニュアルモードの変速性能(Mレンジ) (1) アップシフト

マニュアルモードの変速は、変速終了までの時間が従来5速ATや最新式の自動MTと比較しても、4分の1程度に短縮されており、性能実力差はDriveレンジ以上となっている.(Fig. 5,6)

従来ATや自動MTは,クラッチを開放する時にトルク抜け時間が0.1から0.5sec程度あるが,加速を維持したいという意図に反するものでフィーリング上の悪化要因となっている.一方トロイダルCVTは単に変速が早いだけでなく,機構上全く引きショックは発生せず良好なフィーリングを実現している.しかしながら,変速が早いため変速イナーシャトルクによる突上げショックは,大きめとなる傾向があり,それを防ぐためレスポンスとショックのバランスを考慮して変速スピードを設定している.

- 1) By changing the shifting speed setting, the shift feel can be varied from one of smooth shifting to shift performance that emphasizes a feeling of rapid acceleration, albeit with a slight time lag (Fig. 2).
- 2) Shift response from the moment the driver presses the accelerator pedal can also be improved by calibrating the shift performance according to the use or non-use of an electronically controlled throttle. A typical example of the acceleration waveform obtained without electronic throttle control is shown in Fig. 3.
- 3) By not releasing the lockup clutch when the driver presses the accelerator pedal hard, shift response can be improved as well as improving the feeling of deceleration following lockup again (Fig. 4).

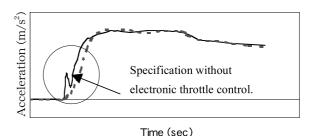


Fig. 3 Performance after calibration (2)

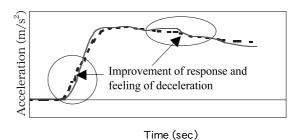


Fig. 4 Performance after calibration (3)

2.2. Shift performance in the manual mode (M range)

(1) Upshifts

The time needed to complete an upshift in the manual mode has been shortened to around one-fourth of that required by a conventional 5-speed AT or even an automated MT, representing the latest transmission system. The difference in actual performance is even greater than in the Drive range (Figs. 5 and 6).

With a conventional AT or an automated MT, torque drops for an interval of around 0.1 to 0.5 sec when the clutch is released. This is one factor that degrades the feeling of performance because it is contrary to the driver's desire to continue accelerating. In contrast, not only does the toroidal CVT shift faster, it also provides a good shift feel because its inherent structure does not produce any head nod. However, inasmuch as it shifts quickly, end bump tends to be somewhat larger on account of shift inertial shock. To avoid that, the shifting speed is designed to strike a good balance between responsiveness and shift shock.

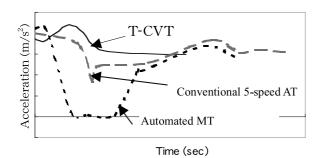


Fig. 5 Shift performance (M1 2)

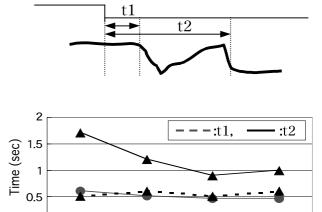


Fig. 6 Shift lag (Upshift)

▲ : Conventional 5-speed AT ● : T-CVT

M3-4

M4-5

M2-3

(2) ダウンシフト

トロイダルCVTは,アップシフトと同様にダウンシフトも素早い変速を実現している.(Fig. 7)特に,エンブレ時に重要なパラメータである「ダウンシフト指令から減速を感じるまでの時間:t1」は,従来ATや自動MTに対して3分の1~8分の1に短縮している.(Fig. 8)

自動MTは,エンジン回転合わせのための「ブリッピング」のために1秒後にようやく減速が始まっている.

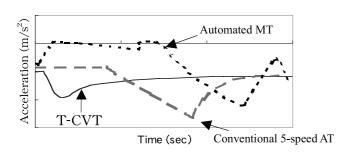


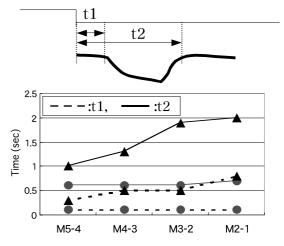
Fig. 7 Shift performance (M2 1)

(2) Downshifts

0

M1-2

The toroidal CVT also executes downshifts quickly, just as it does upshifts (Fig. 7). In the case of engine braking in particular, an important parameter is the lag time (t1) from the moment a downshift command is issued to the moment deceleration becomes perceptible. The toroidal CVT shortens this shift lag to approximately one-third to one-eighth of that for a conventional AT or an automated MT (Fig. 8). With the automated MT, deceleration finally begins about one second later on account of blipping the throttle to adjust the engine speed.



▲ : Conventional 5-speed AT ● : T-CVT Fig. 8 Shift lag (Downshift)

2.3. 山岳路走行時の駆動力制御性(Drive レンジ)

トロイダルCVTのメリットとして,さらに駆動力制御に優れている点がある. 山岳路を同一エンジン,同一パネラで走行した際の駆動力制御性を比較したところ,従来4速ATに比較してアクセルペダルを動かさなければならない幅,頻度が減っていることがわかる.(Fig. 9)

また,エンジン回転変動という見方でも,トロイダルCVTの方がより小さな回転変動で収まっていて,運転者の意図により近いことがわかる(Fig. 10)

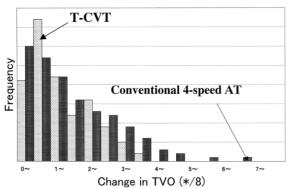


Fig. 9 Frequency of the change in TVO

2.4. 燃費向上への貢献

従来4速ATに比較して10・15モードで約10%の燃 費効果があった.

これはトロイダルCVTが従来ATに比較して、

- 1) 変速比を無段階にコントロールできるため,従来ATに比較しエンジン燃焼効率の良いエンジン回転領域で使えるため.
- 2) LU可能な領域の大幅な拡大により,効率の低い LU解除の使用頻度を大幅に低減したため(2.3の 項の運転条件では約4分の1に低減している).
- などの要因が寄与していると思われる.

3. トロイダルCVT特有の適用技術

3.1. トラクション保証技術

トロイダルCVTのトルク伝達能力は、トラクションオイルに依存するトラクション能力とバリエータ部を締め付けるローディング能力と4本のパワーローラのトルク分配能力で決まる。トラクションオイルにより決まるトラクション能力は、温度依存性が大きな特性を示しており、高温、低温でトルク伝達能力が十分か判断する必要がある。(Fig. 11)

2.3. Drive torque controllability in the D range during mountain road driving

Another advantage of the toroidal CVT is that it allows outstanding drive torque control. A comparison was made of drive torque control characteristics on a mountain road using the same engine and the same drivers. The results indicate that the toroidal CVT reduced the frequency and magnitude of accelerator inputs compared with a conventional 4-speed AT (Fig. 9). Additionally, the toroidal CVT kept the change in engine speed within a smaller range, thereby providing performance closer to the driver's wishes (Fig. 10).

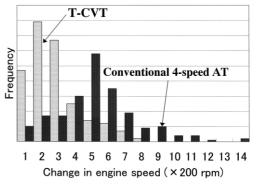


Fig. 10 Frequency of the change in engine speed

2.4. Contribution to improving fuel economy

Compared with a conventional 4-speed AT, the toroidal CVT has the effect of improving fuel economy by approximately 10% under Japan's 10-15 test mode. This is attributed to the following features of the toroidal CVT in comparison with conventional ATs.

- Because the toroidal CVT can control ratio changes continuously, it enables the engine to operate in a speed range of good combustion efficiency compared with conventional ATs.
- 2) The substantial expansion of the region where lockup operation is possible greatly reduces the frequency of using non-lockup operation, which has a lower level of efficiency. (The frequency is reduced to one-fourth as often under the operating conditions in section 2.3.)

3. Unique Technologies Applied to the Toroidal CVT

3.1. Traction assurance technology

The torque capacity of the toroidal CVT is determined by the traction capacity, which is dependent on the traction oil, the loading capacity of the force applied to the variator and the torque distribution capacity of the four power rollers. The traction capacity determined by the traction oil shows large temperature dependence, making it necessary to determine whether sufficient torque capacity is obtained at both high and low temperatures (Fig. 11).

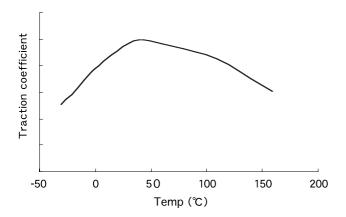


Fig. 11 Coefficient of traction

(1) 高温時のトラクション保証

トラクション保証にとって最も厳しいモードで,ユニット保証温度 + ()まで油温を上昇させ同期崩れ(4本のパワーローラ傾転角がずれること)のないことを確認している.従来は,オイルパン油温を温度の代表値としてきたが,耐久などの過渡運転においてトラクション面温度とオイルパン油温の関係が安定しないため,トラクション面の温度測定も行っている.このトラクション面の温度測定を,さらに精度向上するため,最近は非接触方式の温度計測方法にも取り組んでいる.

さらに,耐久中

- 1)ローディング能力
- 2)トラクションオイルのトラクション能力
- 3)4本のパワーローラのトルク分配能力

が変化し同期崩れが発生しないことを確認するため,各々の傾転角を監視するとともに,わずかな同期崩れを検出した場合でも,耐久を自動的に停止し,何が起きたのか解析できるように停止前の各種データを保存している.(Fig. 12)

(2)低温時のトラクション保証

極低温ではCVTに入力されるトルクの急激上昇を防止することが重要である.そのため,CVT側の前後進切り替えクラッチ部,コントロールバルブ部,さらにエンジン側に特別な制御を織り込み,極低温時に急激なトルク上昇が発生しないように工夫をしている.

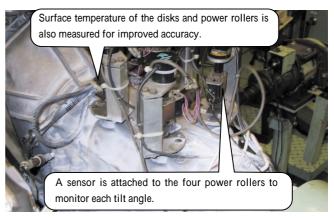


Fig. 12 Durability testing

(1) Traction assurance at high temperatures

The traction oil temperature is raised to a level that exceeds the transmission's guaranteed temperature by a certain extent (+a) to create the severest mode for traction assurance. Under that condition, it is confirmed that the tilt angles of the four power rollers do not differ simultaneously. Previously, the oil temperature in the oil pan was used as a representative temperature. The traction surface temperature is also measured because the relationship between the traction surface temperature and the oil temperature in the oil pan is not stable under extreme operating conditions, including durability testing. A noncontact method of measuring the temperature has been examined recently with the aim of obtaining more accurate measurements of the traction surface temperature.

Moreover, it is confirmed during durability testing that changes in

- 1) loading capacity
- 2) traction performance of the traction oil, and
- 3) torque distribution capacity of the four power rollers do not cause simultaneous tilt angle differences. To accomplish that, each tilt angle is monitored and the durability test is automatically stopped if even the slightest degree of simultaneous difference is detected. Various types of data are recorded to facilitate an analysis of what happened before the test was automatically suspended (Fig. 12).

(2) Traction assurance at low temperatures

At extremely low temperatures, it is important to avoid any sudden increase in the input torque level of the toroidal CVT. Toward that end, a special control measure is incorporated in the CVT's forward/reverse changeover clutch and control valve and in the engine. This control prevents any sharp torque rise from occurring at very low temperatures.

極低温トラクション保証の成立性確認では,CVT滑りの検出精度を向上させるため,CVT部分の可視化も行っている.(Fig. 13)

In confirming the validity of traction assurance at extremely low temperatures, tests are also conducted to visualize various CVT parts in order to detect CVT slipping more accurately (Fig. 13).

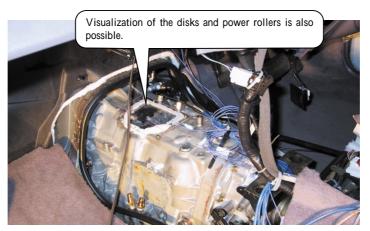


Fig. 13 Cold weather testing

3.2. トルクシフト性能マッチング

トロイダルCVT特有なマッチング技術としてトルクシフト性能マッチングがある。トルクシフトとはトロイダルCVTの特有なものであり、バリエータ部に入力されるトルクが増加した場合には自動的に若干LOW側に変速し、入力トルクが減少した場合には自動的にHi側に変速することを言う。これは、パワーローラ、ディスク(Fig. 14)などの構成部品のガタ、弾性変形などによるものである。

この変速ずれを防ぐためトルクシフト量を予測してその分変速指示を微調整するフィードフォワード制御を採用している、特に過渡的な運転状況で適切でないと変速が目標変速比からずれてしまい狙った変速性能が得られないのでエンジンごとにマッチングを必要としている.

トルクシフト補償制御の有無によるアクセル踏 み込みダウンシフトの変速トレース性の比較を示す.(Fig. 15)

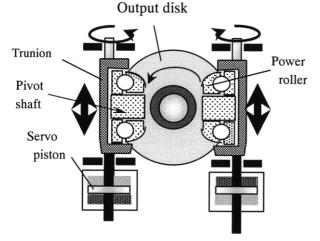


Fig. 14 Toroidal CVT

3.2. Torque shift calibration

One calibration technique uniquely applied to the toroidal CVT is torque shift control. Torque shift is a particular property of the toroidal CVT. It refers to a tendency for the toroidal CVT to shift automatically to a somewhat lower ratio when the torque input into the variator increases and to a somewhat higher ratio when the torque level decreases. This torque shift is caused largely by the play and elastic deformation of the component parts of the toroidal CVT, such as the power rollers and the disks (Fig. 14).

Feedback control is adopted to prevent such ratio differences by predicting the amount of torque shift and adjusting the shift command slightly to the same extent. Under transient driving conditions in particular, the speed ratio may differ from the target ratio if suitable adjustments are not applied, making it impossible to obtain the desired shift performance. Consequently, torque shift has to be calibrated for each engine separately. Figure 15 compares traces of downshift performance in response to an accelerator input with and without compensation by this torque shift control.

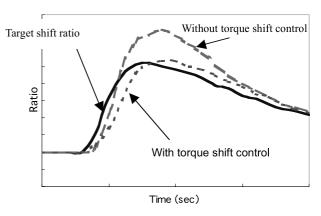


Fig. 15 Ratio change at downshift

4. 最後に

トロイダルCVTは以上のように,特有な技術課 題への対応が必要ではあるが、Automatic Transmissionとしては極めて魅力的なポテンシャル を持っている.

今後この長所を際立たせて, 更に魅力的で高品 質な商品に育てていきたい.

最後に今回のまとめにあたってご協力いただい た関係者の方々に紙面を借りて厚くお礼申し上げ ます.

4. Conclusions

As explained here, although the toroidal CVT must incorporate measures to deal with particular technical issues, its potential as an automatic transmission is extremely attractive. Further efforts will be made to bring out its remarkable features and to develop it into an even more attractive and high-quality product.

Finally, the authors would like to take this opportunity to thank all the people concerned who cooperated with this work.

Authors











Yasuyuki NISHIHARA

Makoto OKAZAKI

Masaoki HORIO Akinori TEZUKA Tsutomo NEMOTO

ギヤ音低減の取り組み

Gear Noise Reduction Techniques

仁藤 政孝*

由田 修*

Masataka NITOU

Osamu YOSHIDA

抄 録 オートマチックトランスミッション(以下AT)や無段変速機(以下CVT)における歯車の数は、マニュアルトランスミッション(以下MT)に比べて少ない、しかし、いずれのトランスミッションの歯車であっても、ギヤ音や強度・耐久性などを満足させながら、小型・軽量化することが要求される.

本稿では,特に歯車精度面から見た当社の歯車加工 技術の現状を紹介する. **Summary** Automatic transmissions (ATs) and continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) have fewer gears than manual transmissions (MTs). However, regardless of the type of transmission, gears need to be reduced in size and weight while still meeting the requirements for noise, strength, durability and other performance parameters. This article describes the present state of gear processing techniques at JATCO, especially with regard to gear accuracy.

1. はじめに

どのようなカテゴリの車両であっても,高級感を発揮させるには,車室内の異音を排除し,静粛性を維持することが重要である.エンジン,AT,タイヤなどの駆動系(回転体で構成)で発生する騒音は,不快で耳障りなものとなる.

中でも,歯車の噛み合い音については,従来からさまざまな研究により改善はしてきているものの,お客様の要求はさらに厳しく,品質向上に向けて改善・対策を実行してきた.

本稿では,ギヤ音低減のため取り組んできた当 社の状況を紹介する.

2. AT, CVTの音振評価手法と保証体制

一般に,トランスミッションで発生する音(振動)は,マウントやボディから車室内に入る場合と,エンジンルームから空気伝播で直接車室内に入る場合とに大別される.

最近では、車両メーカとの間で、完成ユニットの特定部位における振動や音の大きさで評価し、両社が合意した規格値と比較しながら合否を判定する手法を採るようになってきた.このため、当社ではユニットのファイナルテスト工程におけるトランスミッションケース部の振動値をギヤノイズの評価尺度として用いている.

1. Introduction

In every vehicle category, it is essential to isolate noise from the passenger compartment and maintain quietness in order to provide a feeling of high quality. Noise produced by the rotating elements of the drivetrain, including the engine, AT, tires and other parts, sounds unpleasant and is jarring to the ear.

Various studies have been conducted over the years with the aim of reducing gear meshing noise in particular. While improvements have been made, the stricter demands of customers have necessitated the implementation of further improvements and measures to enhance quality with respect to noise.

This article describes various measures that we have taken over the years to reduce gear noise.

2. AT and CVT Noise/Vibration Evaluation Methods and Quality Assurance System

In general, the noise (vibration) produced by a transmission is broadly divided between structure-borne noise that is transferred to the passenger compartment via mounts and the vehicle body and air-borne noise that is transmitted directly to the vehicle interior from the engine compartment.

The procedure adopted between JATCO and the automakers in recent years is to evaluate noise and vibration levels at specific places on fully assembled transmissions and to make accept/reject decisions on the basis of a comparison with the standards agreed upon by the two companies. For that reason, we use the vibration level of the transmission case in the final test process of our transmissions as the yardstick for evaluating gear noise.

^{*}ユニット技術部

Unit Production Engineering Department

人間の官能評価と計測値とを関連づけるには, その車両の伝達系や空気伝播の特性を明確にする など,複雑で難しい作業を伴うが,10年以上に及 ぶデータ蓄積と解析とにより,ユニットの振動規 格値を決定している.

現在当社で生産されるユニットの殆どが,1台毎に完成ユニットで振動を評価し出荷している. Fig.1に音振評価の一例を示す. Correlating subjective evaluations of noise with measured values is a complicated and difficult process that includes clarifying the characteristics of the structure-borne system of the vehicle and noise propagation through the air. The noise/vibration standards determined for our transmissions are based on analyses of data accumulated over a period of more than ten years.

Nearly every transmission we produce today undergoes a vibration evaluation of the fully assembled unit before it is shipped. Figure 1 shows examples of noise evaluations based on case vibration.

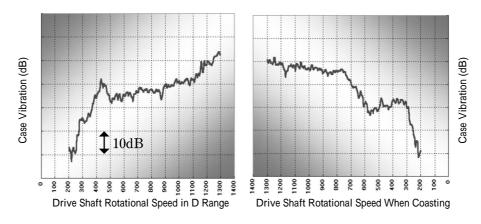


Fig. 1 Examples of evaluation by case vibration

3.歯車単品精度と完成ユニットの音振

完成ユニットでギヤの噛み合いによるケース振動を定量評価し,この値が規格値を満足するように歯車単品を作り込むことが必要となる.

正しいインボリュート曲線の歯型を持つ一対の 歯車を無負荷で噛み合わせた場合,両歯車の回転 角度の関係は常時正比例することになる.しかし, 歯型に誤差があったり,負荷により歯が変形すれ ば両者の回転角度の関係は正比例せず,伝達誤差 を生じる.この伝達誤差と軸系の捩じり剛性や回 転慣性,軸受剛性などとから発生する噛み合い振 動が起振力となり,軸受け,ケース表面へと伝達 され,ギヤ音の発生源となる.

ただ,正しいインボリュート曲線に近い歯型,つまりJIS,DINに規定される高等級の歯型を持つ歯車を作りさえすれば,伝達誤差が少なくなるとは限らないことが,ギヤ音を技術的に難しいものとしている.

上述の通り,負荷が掛かった状態では,歯の曲がりのほか,軸受やケースの変形により歯面は倒れてしまう.また,その倒れの大きさは,軸受けや箱物の剛性によりユニット毎に異なる.更には,組み付け時の誤差によっても同様の誤差を生じる.

3. Relationship Between Gear Accuracy and Noise/Vibration of Fully Assembled Transmissions

Case vibration caused by gear meshing in a fully assembled transmission is measured quantitatively. Every gear in a transmission must be manufactured so that the vibration level measured for the assembled unit meets the agreed upon standard.

When a pair of gears having tooth profiles with correct involute curves mesh under a no-load condition, the rotational angles of the two gears are normally directly proportional. However, if the tooth profile is incorrect or if the applied load induces tooth deformation, the rotational angles of the two gears do not become directly proportional, giving rise to transmission error. This transmission error and meshing vibration, produced by such factors as the torsional stiffness or rotational inertia of the drive shaft and bearing stiffness, become exciting forces that are transmitted to the bearings and case surface to become the sources of gear noise.

So long as gears are manufactured with profiles close to the correct involute curves, i.e., high-grade gear profiles as specified by the JIS and DIN standards, gear noise is technically less likely to occur, though transmission error is not necessarily reduced.

As mentioned above, in addition to tooth bending under a loaded condition, deformation of the bearings or transmission case can cause tooth flank deflection. The magnitude of such deflection also varies from one transmission to another depending on the stiffness of the bearings and the case. Moreover, transmission error can also be induced by error that occurs at the time of assembly.

このため、予め誤差を考慮して歯面形状を修正している.従って、一対の歯車を製作する場合には、それぞれ相手方の歯面の倒れも考慮して歯面を修正し、噛み合い時に振動が小さくなる歯面形状を決定するのである.

当社では、ケースなどの変形をシミュレーション計算し、トルク条件などに影響されにくい、ロバスト性の高い歯面形状を算出するとともに、実験でその妥当性を検証している.

その場合,一対の歯車を実際に噛み合わせたときの歯当たりを見て検証する方法が適しており,思った通りの歯型に近づけるための歯型修正にも役立つ.ただ工数を要することから,歯面の噛み合い状態を予測できるように,同時接触線を計測し評価する手法や,歯面形状を評価する手法などを併用している.

また,噛み合い振動を直接計測するため,高精度のロータリーエンコーダや,レーザ速度計を用いて計測している.

Fig.2は噛み合い始め側と噛み合い終わり側とで圧力角の狙いを僅かに変え、歯先下がり(バイアスイン)に修正した場合、Fig.3はCASE振動及び歯形の丸みを変化させた場合のCASE振動の実験結果である.

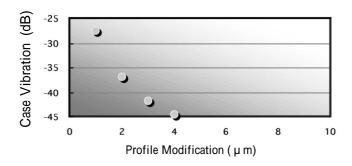


Fig. 2 Correlation between profile modification and case vibration

Fig.4, Fig.5に,これらの狙いの歯面形状を作るために当社で用いている歯車研削盤と,それを用いて試作した歯面形状データの一例を示す.

For that reason, the tooth flank topology is modified, taking such error into account in advance. Accordingly, when manufacturing a pair of gears, the tooth flank topology is determined so that little vibration occurs during meshing, and the tooth flanks are modified, taking into account the respective tooth flank deflection of the mating gear as well.

At JATCO, we run simulations to calculate the deformation of the case and other parts. Highly robust gear face profiles are calculated that are not likely to be influenced by the torque load or other conditions. Additionally, the validity of the calculated profiles is confirmed experimentally.

Validation is done by visually confirming tooth contact when pairs of gears actually mesh. This suitable approach is also helpful in modifying the tooth profile so that it approaches the desired profile. However, because of the considerable manpower required, parallel predictions are also made of the meshing condition of the tooth flanks. That is accomplished through the use of various methods, such as by calculating and evaluating the simultaneous contact lines and by evaluating the tooth flank topologies.

Meshing vibration is also measured directly by using a high-accuracy rotary encoder and a laser velocimeter.

Figure 2 shows the measured case vibration when the target pressure angle on the starting and ending sides of meshing was modified slightly to produce bias-in contact. Figure 3 shows the measured case vibration when the case vibration characteristics and tooth profile roundness were changed.

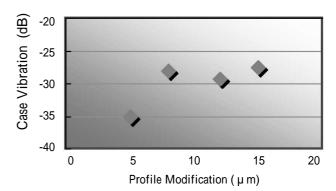


Fig. 3 Correlation between profile crowning and case vibration

The gear grinding machine used at JATCO to produce tooth flank geometries incorporating such target specifications is shown in Fig. 4, and one example of the data for a prototype tooth flank topology produced on this machine is given in Fig. 5.

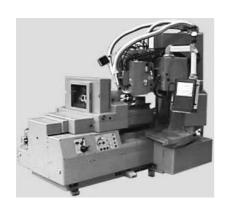


Fig. 4 Maag topological gear grinding machine

4. 完成ユニットでの検証

AT及びCVTの場合,内部構造が複雑であるが,ギヤ音が問題となる領域で,ケースや各部品の共振が発生しないような設計がされていることが前提となる.温度特性や動的特性なども,ケースの軸受け剛性や振動伝達特性などに影響するので,これらが考慮された音振設計となっていなければならない.産まれの悪いユニットと言われるものでは,音振が問題となる周波数領域での共振特性などが解決されないままであることが多く,歯面をチューニングしたり製造ばらつきを少なくしても,ギヤ音に悩ませられることになる.

前述の歯当たり解析で得られた結果をフィード バックして試作した歯面形状を持つ歯車を完成ユニットに組み込み,回転数や負荷を変えた各種の 運転条件で,上記共振特性も含めて評価している.

Fig.6は,試作歯車を完成ユニットにして各運転条件で評価した一例である.

このようにして,量産時の目標歯面形状が決定される.

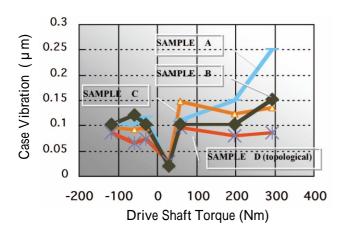


Fig. 6 Results of drive shaft torque and case vibration in each trial gear sets

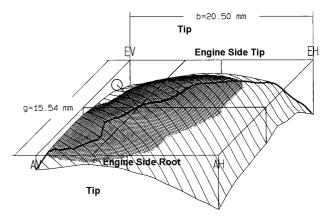


Fig.5 Example of topological modification

4. Validation with Fully Assembled Transmissions

Although ATs and CVTs have a complex internal structure, one precondition of their design is that the resonant frequencies of the case and constituent parts should not occur in the region where gear noise becomes a problem. Temperature characteristics, dynamic characteristics and other factors must also be reflected in the noise and vibration design, as they also affect the bearing stiffness of the case and vibration transfer characteristics. Transmissions that are said to be of poor quality are often ones for which the resonant characteristics and other properties were not resolved in the frequency region where noise and vibration are an issue. Consequently, gear noise can still be an annoying problem even though tooth flanks has been suitably tuned and manufacturing variability has been reduced.

The results of the above-mentioned tooth contact analysis are fed back and used in manufacturing gears having a prototype tooth flank topology. The gears are then assembled into fully completed transmissions, which are evaluated, including their resonant characteristics, under various operating conditions, such as different rotational speeds and loads.

Figure 6 shows examples of the case vibration measured under various operating conditions for fully assembled transmissions incorporating prototype gearsets. The target tooth flank topology for use in production transmissions is determined on the basis of such evaluations.

5. 歯面形状の作り込み

一方,ユニットを量産に移行するためには,その目標歯面形状に対する上下限品を製作して確認し,管理幅を決める必要がある.

ユニットでの振動管理値が厳しいものでは,歯面形状で許される管理範囲は極めて狭くなり,この歯面形状を維持するには,歯車精度を数ミクロンの範囲で管理することが必要となる場合があり,ばらつきを抑えるために,熱処理後に歯面仕上げを施しているものもある.

歯面のホーニングや研削は,熱処理後の仕上げ加工であり,当社では熱処理歪みによるばらつきを低減させることができる工法として,長年この加工技術の開発に取り組んできた.

Table1は,当社と車輌メーカ各社で製造した歯車の最終歯面仕上げ工法を調査し,比較したものである.

Fig.7, Fig.8, Fig.9は,他社ATの歯車(N=30個) との精度ばらつきを比較したものである.

Table 1 Comparison of finishing methods at JATCO and various automakers

Maker	Transmission Vehicle	Output	Idler	Reduction	Final
	Α	G+H	Н	G+H	Н
JATCO	В	Н	Н	G+H	H
(Transmission)	С	G+H	G+H	G+H	G+H
	D	Н	Н	H	Н
	E	Н	G+H	G+H	Н
	Α	S	S	S	S
Α	В	S	S	S	S
(Automaker)	C	S	S	S	S
	D	S	S	S	S
	Α			S	G
В	В			S	G
(Automaker)	C			S	G
	D	H	Н	S	G
С	Α	S	G+H	S	G+H
(Automaker)	В	H	Н	S	S
D (Automaker)		Н	G+H	Н	S
E (Automaker)		S	G	S	S
Legend		G: Grinding	H: Honing	S: Shaving	

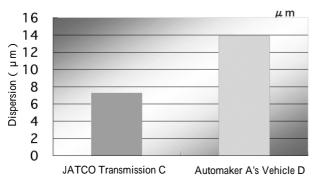


Fig. 7 Comparison of dispersion of pressure angle error

5. Manufacturing of Tooth Flank Topology

In the course of putting a transmission into mass production, the tolerance control range must be determined by manufacturing and confirming upper and lower limit specimens with respect to the target tooth flank topology.

For transmissions having a stringent vibration control value, the control range allowed for the tooth flank topology becomes extremely narrow. To maintain the desired tooth flank topology, gear accuracy must sometimes be controlled to within several microns. Gear teeth are surface finished following heat treatment in order to control variability in gear accuracy.

Honing and grinding are the surface finishing techniques applied to tooth flanks following heat treatment. At JATCO, we have devoted many years to the development of honing and grinding technologies as methods for reducing variability induced by heat treatment strain.

A survey was made of the final surface finishing methods applied to the tooth flank of gears manufactured at JATCO and at different automakers, and the results are compared in Table 1. Figures 7, 8 and 9 compare the error dispersion found for the gears (N = 30 samples) of JATCO transmissions and other companies' ATs.

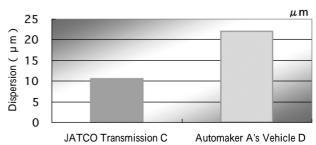


Fig. 8 Comparison of dispersion of helical angle error

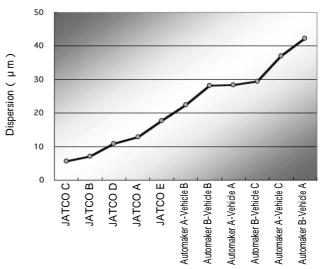


Fig. 9 Comparison of dispersion of profile error

以上のように,当社の量産歯車の精度ばらつきは,他社に比べ優位にあり,ギヤ音を管理し低騒音化するための生産技術力は十分蓄積されていると考える.

6. 今後の取り組み

現在,自動車部品の製造各社は,生き残りのため激しい競争を繰り広げている。今後の競争に勝ち残るためには,開発期間の短縮,コスト低減の加速などにより,お客様の要望に応える必要がある。従って,音振開発も,実機を使った実験からシミュレーションに置き代わる部分も多くなっている。

しかしながら,現状では最終的に歯車を試作し, ユニットに組み,実験するというステップを踏ま ざるを得ない場合が多い.従って,生産技術面か らは,コストミニマムを念頭に置きながら,ユニ ット開発部門との連携を密にし,更に静粛性を向 上させるための生産技術を追及していきたい. These figures indicate that JATCO's production gears are superior to others in terms of variation in accuracy, suggesting that ample production engineering technologies have been accumulated for controlling gear noise and reducing overall noise levels.

6. Future Efforts

Fierce competition for survival is currently unfolding among the makers of automotive parts. In order to survive this competition successfully in the years ahead, it will be necessary to meet customers' demands by stepping up efforts to shorten development lead times and reduce costs. Toward that end, computer simulations will increasingly replace much of the testing work previously done on actual transmissions in the development of noise and vibration performance.

At present, however, it is often necessary in the end to go through the steps of producing prototype gears, assembling them in actual transmissions and conducting tests to make performance evaluations. Accordingly, in terms of production engineering, we intend to pursue production engineering technologies for improving interior quietness further through close cooperation with the transmission development departments, keeping in mind the concept of minimal cost.

Authors



Masataka NITOU



Osamu YOSHIDA

JEPS活動 箱物加工ライン「0.1分/工程」の紹介

Introducing the Transmission Case & Torque Converter Housing Machining Lines with 0.1 Minute/Operation

松本 憲治*

Kenji MATSUMOTO

抄録業界トップレベルを目指し、生産システムの再構築を図るツールとして、JEPS活動が全社に展開されている。ジヤトコテクニカルレビュー第3号でJEPS活動については紹介されているが、本原稿ではJEPS活動で取り組んでいる『0.1分/工程』ラインについて、当初困難とされていた箱物(CASE, HSG-CONV)加工ラインで実現した際の取り組み事例を紹介する。

Summary The JATCO Excellent Production System (JEPS) activity is being deployed throughout the company as a tool for reconstructing our production systems with the aim of making them among the best in the industry. The JEPS activity was described in volume No. 3 of the *JATCO Technical Review*. This article presents examples of the application of this activity to the machining lines for transmission cases and torque converter housings, for which we have succeeded in achieving 0.1 minute/operation, something that was initially thought to be difficult to accomplish.

1. はじめに

人がワークを運搬し、治具に取付ける『持ち回り ライン』において、生産性向上、ラインの安定稼動 (作業リズムの定常化)等を目的として、手作業時間、歩行時間を究極に短くすることが求められて きた.

JEPS活動としては, '99年度下期の富士宮事業所レースインナ加工ラインをかわきりに,現在38ラインが『0.1分/工程』を実現している.

2. 当初の課題

箱物(CASE, HSG-CONV)ラインでの課題.

課題1 取付け性が悪い

ワークが大きいため,治具への取付けの際両手でワークを押さえる必要がある(Fig. 1)

1. Introduction

On lines where employees carry workpieces to different machines and fixture them in jigs for machining, there have been demands to shorten manual task time and walking time as much as possible with the aim of improving productivity and stabilizing line operations, i.e., achieving a constant work rhythm. The JEPS activity was first applied to the inner race machining line at the Fujinomiya Plant in the second half of FY 1999. This activity has currently achieved 0.1 min/operation on 38 production lines.

2. Issues Involved

The following issues were tackled on the machining lines for transmission cases and torque converter housings.

Issue No. 1: Poor fixturability

Because of the large size of the workpieces, it was necessary to hold them in both hands when fixturing them in the jigs (Fig. 1).

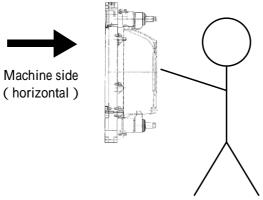


Fig. 1 Posture when fixturing workpieces

ユニット技術部 Unit Production Engineering Department

課題2治具への寄り付き性が悪い

汎用設備+搬送コンベアとすると,治具~搬送ラインの距離が大きく(約500mm~700mm)作業者が設備に向かい体を乗り出す必要があり,手が届かない場合もある.これに対し,従来は搬送コンベアにくびれを作ることで,対応してきた(Fig.2)

これでも,作業者は治具に向かい大きく体を乗り出す必要があった.

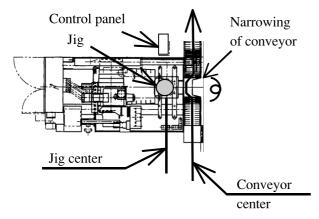


Fig. 2 Layout of conventional equipment

課題3 治具セット,払い出し時間が長い ワークが大きいため,治具へのセット,治具からの払い出しのスピードに限界がある.

課題4作業の方向性に統一感がない

人の作業動作の方向性を整理すると,

搬送してきたワークを一旦放置し,設備内にある治具上のワークを取り出し次工程に向けコンベアに払い出す.

次に体を搬送の流れに対し逆に戻し,新たに加 工するワークを治具にセットする.

結果,作業者の体が治具に向かい2度動き,かつ 搬送方向に逆流する動きもあるから,作業の流れ(方向性)を完全に断ち切る動作があるともいえる.

3.CVTラインの事例

CVTのHSG - CONV加工ラインでは課題に対し,以下のように対応した.

課題1 取付け性の向上

治具に90度反転装置(チルト)を追加したことで,加工するときはワーク垂直,治具へのワークセット時はワーク水平とし,治具セット時に人がワークを支えなくても良い構造にした(Fig.3)

Issue No. 2: Poor jig approachability

With general-purpose machines and conveyors, there is usually a large distance between the jig and the conveyor line (approximately 500-700 mm). That makes it necessary for the operator to lean forward toward the machine, and there are times when the operator cannot reach the jig. Previously, that problem was addressed by narrowing the conveyor in front of the jig (Fig. 2). However, the operator still had to lean forward considerably toward the jig.

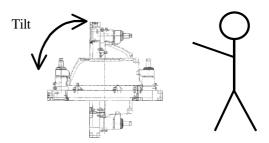


Fig. 3 Orientation of tilting jig

Issue No. 3: Long time needed for fixturing and removing workpieces from jigs

The size of the workpieces limited how fast they could be fixtured and removed from the jigs.

Issue No. 4: Lack of unified direction in work motions

The flow of work motions performed by operators can be summarized as follows. The operator first sets aside the workpiece transported to his station on the conveyor, removes the workpiece from the jig on the machine and sets it on the conveyor to the next station. The operator then turns around in the opposite direction of conveyor movement and sets the new workpiece to be machined in the jig. The operator's body thus turns toward the jig twice and also moves in the opposite direction from the movement of the conveyor. As a result, the operator's motions completely break the directional continuity of the work flow.

3. Example on CVT Line

The following measures were taken to address certain issues on the machining lines for the torque converter housings of continuously variable transmissions (CVTs).

Issue No. 1: Improvement of fixturability

A tilting mechanism for rotating the jig 90 ° was added to make it unnecessary for the operator to support the workpiece when fixturing it in the jig. With this improved construction, the workpiece is put in the jig horizontally, rotated 90 ° and machined vertically (Fig. 3).

課題2治具への寄り付き性の向上

ワークを治具にセットするには両手で位置決めをする必要があったが、Fig.4にあるように、ワークの位置決め治具をワーク形状に合わせた"形状ガイド治具"としたことで、片手でも確実な治具セットが出来るようにした。

その結果,体を治具に対し傾ける量を小さく することが出来た.

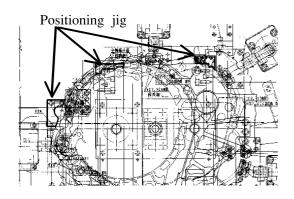


Fig. 4 Positioning jig

課題3治具セット,払い出し時間の短縮

加工完了後のワークをコンベア上に自動的に払 い出す装置追加した.

その結果,治具からの払い出し作業が不要となり,手作業時間の大幅な短縮が図れた(Fig.5)

課題4作業の方向性を統一する

治具からの払い出し作業が不要になった事で,搬送方向に逆流する動きが無くなった.更に,治具に向う作業者の動作を1回にすることができ,かつ課題2の解決により動作の量も小さくなったことから,作業の方向性が搬送方向に統一できた(Fig.5)

CVTラインの新たな課題

課題5 設備費の増加

払い出し装置の追加により設備費が上がった.

課題6治具大型化によるロス

チルト治具の採用により、前面カバーが大きくなったことで、設備がサイクル時間のネックになる場合(人が設備を待つ場合)には、治具へのワーク取付けに時間のロスが生まれることがわかった。

Issue No. 2: Improvement of jig approachability

Previously, it was necessary to position the workpiece with both hands when fixturing it in the jig. A positioning jig shaped in the form of the workpiece was adopted as shown in Fig. 4. This "shape guiding jig" enables the operator to position the workpiece in the jig reliably with just one hand. As a result, the operator does not have to lean forward toward the jig as much as before.

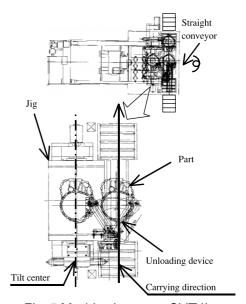


Fig. 5 Machine layout on CVT line

Issue No. 3: Shortening of time for fixturing and removing workpieces from jigs

An unloading device was added that automatically unloads machined workpieces and places them on the conveyor (Fig. 5). By eliminating the need for the operator to remove workpieces from the jig, this device greatly shortens the time spent on manual tasks.

Issue No. 4: Unification of direction of work flow

Since the operator does not have to remove workpieces from the jig, it is no longer necessary to turn in the opposite direction of conveyor movement. Moreover, the operator only has to face in the direction of the jig once, and the amount of body movement has been reduced due to the resolution of Issue No. 2. As a result, the work flow has been unified in the direction of conveyor movement (Fig. 5).

New issues on CVT line

Issue No. 5: Increased equipment cost

The addition of the unloading device increased the equipment cost.

Issue No. 6: Lost time due to larger jig

The adoption of the tilting jig increased the size of the front cover. It was found that, in cases where the equipment impinged on the cycle time because the operator had to wait for the machine, time was lost when fixturing the workpiece in the jig.

4. FF5速ATラインの事例

CVTラインの反省を踏まえ,FF5速ATのラインではコンパクトでかつシンプルな治具の具現化を徹底的に追求することとした。

CVTラインは治具のチルト軸をワークのほぼ中心に近い配置であり、チルト軸の構成部品は、ワークに対し、両側面に張り出す形となっている. (Fig.6)

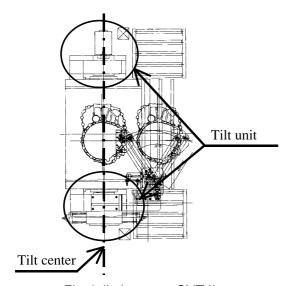


Fig. 6 Jig layout on CVT line

課題5払い出し装置の廃止

CVTラインに対し、FF5速ATラインではチルト軸を治具~搬送ラインの間に配置することで、治具全体を小さくする事に成功した(Fig.7)

治具の側面図も示す (Fig.8)

4. Example on Front-drive 5-speed AT Line

After reflecting on the situation for the CVT line, it was decided to make a thoroughgoing effort to achieve a compact and simple jig for the machining line of 5-speed ATs for front-wheel-drive cars.

On the CVT line, the tilting axis of the jig is positioned close to the center of the workpiece. The components making up the tilting axis extend beyond both sides of the workpiece (Fig. 6).

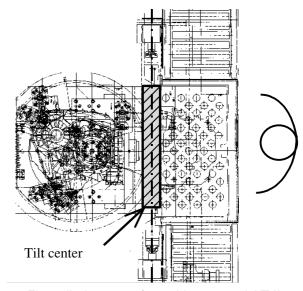


Fig. 7 Jig layout on front-drive 5-speed AT line

Issue No. 5: Discontinuation of unloading device Compared with the jig on the CVT line, the overall size of the jig was reduced on the front-drive 5speed AT line by positioning the tilting axis between the jig and the conveyor line (Fig. 7).

A side view of the AT line jig is shown in Fig. 8.

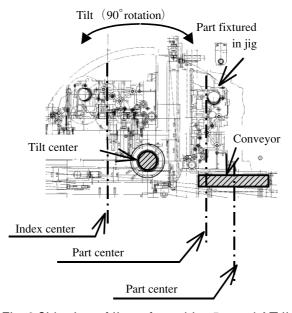


Fig. 8 Side view of jig on front-drive 5-speed AT line

Fig.8から分かるように,搬送中心から治具セットまでの距離が非常に小さくできている.

搬送ラインから,ワークを治具にセットするときのワーク移動距離を見ると,CVTラインでは約500mmなのに対し,FF5速ATラインでは150mm程度にできた.これにより寄り付き性(課題2)の大幅な向上が図れた.

その結果,払い出し装置がなくても,払い出し時間の短縮(課題3)と作業の方向性の統一(課題4)が図れた.

課題6前面シャッターカバーのコンパクト化 前述チルト治具の改善で,治具全体がコンパクトに出来た事から,設備前面のシャッターカバーについてもコンパクト化が図れた(Fig. 9) As is clear from this figure, the distance from the center of the conveyor to the position where the workpiece is fixtured in the jig has been significantly reduced.

A comparison is made here of the distance the operator moves the workpiece from the conveyor to the jig when fixturing the workpiece. Compared with a distance of approximately 500 mm on the CVT line, the distance has been shortened to around 150 mm on the front-drive 5-speed AT line for a substantial improvement in jig approachability (Issue No. 2).

As a result, the unloading device became unnecessary, which shortened the unloading time (Issue No. 3) and unified the direction of work flow (Issue No. 4).

Issue No. 6: Downsizing of front shutter cover

The above-mentioned improvement of the tilting jig made it possible to reduce the overall size of the jig. As a result, the front shutter cover was also made more compact (Fig. 9).

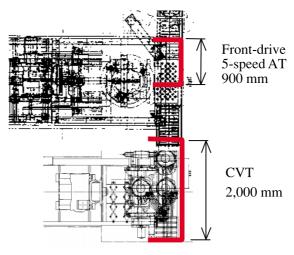


Fig. 9 Cover size

これにより、設備がサイクル時間のネックになる場合でも、カバーが開いてから治具セットまでの時間が短縮でき、ワークを治具に取付ける時間のロス(課題6)を小さくする事が出来た.

5. 効果

CVTライン,FF5速ATラインいずれの事例も JEPSの評価で0.1分を達成できた.

CVTラインにおいては15台の設備の掛け持ちを一人の作業者にて実現し、FF5速ATラインにおいては20台の設備の掛け持ちを一人の作業者にて達成できた.

This has reduced the time interval from the opening of the cover to the fixturing of the workpiece in the jig, even in cases where the machine impinges on the cycle time. The time lost in fixturing workpieces in the jig has been reduced as a result (Issue No. 6).

5. Benefits

A time of 0.1 min/operation, according to the JEPS evaluation, has been achieved on both the CVT line and the front-drive 5-speed AT line. On the CVT line, one operator can now handle 15 machines, and, on the front-drive 5-speed AT line, one operator can run 20 machines.

6. 今後の課題と所感

箱物部品の場合,設備が汎用機であることから,設備配置のピッチを短縮する事は困難であると考えがちであり,普段の仕事の中で歩行時間短縮の改善事例をまとめる機会が少ない.

従って,今回の事例も主に手作業時間の短縮に 焦点をあて紹介した.

しかし,今後更なる時間短縮を目指すためには, 歩行時間短縮にも焦点をあて,何に取り組むべき かを整理していきたい.

なお、本稿の作成にあたり、CVT HSG - CONV 担当ユニット技術部小笠原 寛殿、FF5速AT CASE - TRANS担当ユニット技術部古郡 竜也殿に 全面的なご協力を得ましたことを感謝いたします。

6. Future Tasks and Acknowledgments

For cases and housings, there is a tendency to think that it is difficult to reduce the spacing between general-purpose machines on account of their universal nature. There have been few opportunities to compile examples of improvements that shorten walking time in ordinary work operations. Accordingly, the examples presented here have also focused principally on the reduction of manual task time.

However, in order to shorten task times further in the future, attention must also be focused on identifying issues that should be addressed to reduce walking time as well.

The author would like to thank Hiroshi Ogasawara and Tatsuya Furugori for their full cooperation in connection with the writing of this article. In the Unit Production Engineering Department, the former is responsible for CVT torque converter housings and the latter is responsible for front-drive 5-speed AT cases.

Author



Kenji MATSUMOTO

塑性加工技術によるネットシェイプ化取り組み事例

Examples of Netshaping Using Plastic Working Techniques

山内 吉美^{*} Yoshimi YAMAUCHI 山崎 卓矢*

Takuya YAMAZAKI

抄 録 自動変速機 以下ATとする)部品の低コスト化や小型・軽量化などの課題への対応として,塑性加工技術によるネットシェイプ化は有効な方法の一つである.具体的にフローフォーミングや冷間鍛造技術の開発と実用化に取り組んで来た.

本稿では、上記の塑性加工技術によるAT部品のネットシェイプ化取り組み事例について紹介する.

Summary Netshaping by plastic working techniques is one effective approach to addressing issues such as cost, size and weight reductions for automatic transmission (AT) parts. Specifically, we have been developing and implementing flow forming and cold forging techniques to accomplish netshaping. This article presents examples of the netshaping of AT parts using these techniques.

1. はじめに

近年,AT部品の低コスト化の要求がますます強くなっており,また小型・軽量化のニーズも増している.これらのニーズに対して,塑性加工技術によるネットシェイプ化は,材料費の低減だけでなく,後工程(切削・研削等の機械加工工程)の省略や生産性の向上(リードタイム短縮等),さらに高強度化による部品の小型・軽量化の効果を上げる有効な方法の一つである.また,複数の部品の一体化成形についても,大幅な低コスト化の方法として有効である.

一方,AT部品製造における環境保護の観点からは原料の無駄の最小化,エネルギー使用の最小化は最重要課題であり,そういった意味からもネットシェイプ化はまさに時代の要請と言える.

また,部品の軽量化は当然のことながら燃費向上に効果があり,交通運輸全体に関わるエネルギー低減,排出ガス低減にも大きく寄与することが期待される.

本稿では我々が携わってきたAT部品のネットシェイプ化技術を中心に過去から現在の流れを紹介しながら、将来の動向と今後の取り組み課題について述べる.

2.ネットシェイプ化の取り組み

当社における塑性加工部門は,第二富士事業所の鍛造,富士宮事業所のプレス・フローフォーミング(一部鍛造も有)がある.第二富士事業所の鍛造は長い歴史を持ち,富士宮事業所は最近の取り組みである.

* 材料工法開発室 Materials & Process Development Department

1. Introduction

Demands for lower cost AT parts have become increasingly stronger in recent years, along with greater needs to reduce the size and weight of parts. Netshaping by plastic working techniques is one effective method of meeting these needs. Not only does netshaping reduce the material cost, it also allows subsequent operations (e.g., machining processes such as cutting and grinding) to be eliminated, improves productivity (i.e., shortens lead times, etc.) and is effective in reducing the size and weight of parts as a result of improving their strength. In addition, it is also an effective method for achieving large cost reductions in the integrated forming of multiple parts.

From the standpoint of environmental protection in AT parts manufacturing, on the other hand, the most important issues are to minimize wasteful use of materials and energy consumption. For these reasons as well, netshaping is truly a requirement of the present times.

It also goes without saying that reducing the weight of parts improves fuel economy as well. Therefore, netshaping is also expected to contribute substantially to reducing energy consumption and exhaust emissions in the entire road transportation sector.

This article describes the general application of netshaping processes to AT parts, from the past to the present, and discusses future trends and issues to be addressed in the coming years.

2. Netshaping Developments

Plastic working operations at JATCO include forging in Fuji Manufacturing Department No. 2 and press forming and flow forming (including some forging) in the Fujinomiya Manufacturing Department. Fuji Manufacturing Department No. 2 has a long history of forging, but this process was begun only recently in the Fujinomiya Manufacturing Department.

当社ではTable 1に示す代表的な事例のように,今まで塑性加工技術の開発に取り組んできている. 主に冷間鍛造による材料の削減やネットシェイプ 化を中心におこなってきたが,次の課題としてさらにネットシェイプ化の取り組みを進めている.

Table 1 shows typical examples of the plastic working techniques that we have developed at JATCO to date. Major focus has been on reducing material usage and implementing netshaping by cold forging. The next issue is to expand netshaping to other parts in the future.

			•	•		•	•	
			Advantages					
Part name	Technical issues	Lead time	Process	Material	Die	Weight	Parts	Next issues
		Leau tillie	reduction	reduction	simplification	reduction	reduction	
Final gear	Hot roll forging& rotary forging			0				Outer helical gear forming
Input shaft	Cold extrusion of splines		0					
Internal gear	Cold rolling mill			0	0			Inner helical gear forming
Clutch gear	One-piece forming of clutch gear	0	0			0	0	Main gear helical forming
Pinion planet	Helical gear forging	0	0	0				Die cost reduction
Hub, sleeve	One-piece forming of clutch gear		0	0				Weight & thickness reduction
Output shaft	Forming of inner splines	0	0				0	
Inner race	Forming of inner splines		0					
Clutch drum	Flow forming of one-piece drum	0	0		0	0	0	Increase thickness & splitting
Pulley	One-piece forming with park gear	0	0				0	Weight reduction

Table 1 Examples of developed plastic working techniques

Main Secondary

本稿では、最近の事例で富士宮事業所における取り組みについて述べる、1996年以降、新規性の高い塑性加工工法について検討し、フローフォーミング及び冷間鍛造設備を導入し開発と実用化を進めてきた、具体的な取り組みとしてAT部品の低コスト化と商品力(小型・軽量化)の向上の狙いに対して(1)フローフォーミング工法によるクラッチドラム成形やコンバータカバーの増肉成形等(2)冷間鍛造によるネットシェイプ化(内・外歯成形)や大きい部品の一体化等をおこなった、

以下に,その実用化した取り組み事例を紹介する.

3.取り組み事例

3.1. フローフォーミング工法によるクラッチドラムの成形 クラッチドラムをフローフォーミング工法により,インナドラムとアウタドラムを一体成形した事例を紹介する. Fig. 1に一体化前後の形状を示す. フローフォーミング工法は,プレスに比べ金型費が大幅に低減できかつ設備費も低減できる. 生産性はプレスには及ばないが(1)当社の生産規模に適した設備で,小ロット部品の低コスト化が可

能なこと(2) 増肉, 裂開, 肉寄せ等の応用技術に

より複雑な成形ができることから取り組んだ.

This article describes examples of recent efforts undertaken in the Fujinomiya Manufacturing Department. Since 1996, highly novel plastic working techniques have been examined, flow forming and cold forging facilities have been installed, and netshaping methods have been developed and put in use. The following two examples are typical of the activities carried out to reduce the cost of AT parts and to improve product appeal through size and weight reductions: (1) Flow forming of the clutch drum and the forming of torque converter covers through a technique of increasing the wall thickness; (2) netshaping of inner and outer gear teeth by cold forging and integration of large parts.

The following sections describe examples of the techniques that have been implemented.

3. Examples of Activities

3.1. Flow forming of dutch drum

This example concerns the integrated forming of the inner and outer pieces of the clutch drum in a flow forming process. Figure 1 compares the clutch drum geometries before and after integration.

Compared with press forming, a flow forming process greatly reduces the die cost and also the equipment cost. Though productivity does not match that of press forming, we selected a flow forming process for the following reasons. (1) It would reduce the cost of small-lot parts by using equipment suitable to our company's production scale. (2) It would enable the forming of parts with intricate geometries through the use of such approaches as increasing the wall thickness, splitting and material collection, among others.

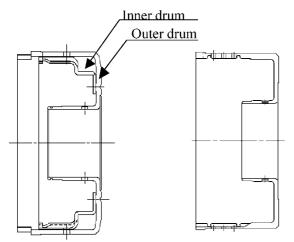


Fig. 1 Difference between two-piece and one-piece drums

従来,ブレーキバンドを使用するクラッチドラムでは,インナドラムとアウタドラムを別々にプレス成形後,電子ビーム溶接(以下EBWとする)していたが,Fig.2のようにフローフォーミングによる一体成形を実現し,成形工程並びにEBW・前洗浄・スパッタ除去や振れ取り加工が廃止できた.

フローフォーミングの工程はFig.3に示すように フラットの板から3工程で成形を完了する.

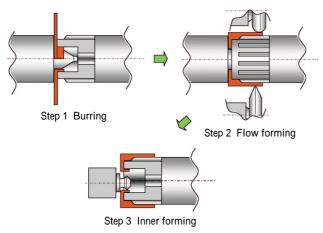


Fig. 3 Flow forming process

他のメリットとして,ボス外径とスプライン近くのシール部は金型精度がそのまま転写され,無切削のため同芯度が良好であり,EBWのスパッタによるコンタミ(夾雑物)対策が不要となった.

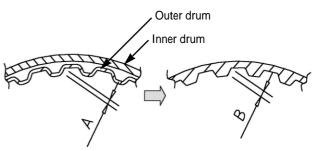
また,一体化によりインナの板厚分だけ径を縮小できること,スプラインのダレが少ないため低い歯でもストレート長さが確保できることからサイズダウンでき,そのため軽量化が可能になった.(Fig.4)



Fig. 2 Reverse clutch drum

The clutch drum, which makes use of a brake band, was previously produced by press forming the inner and outer drums separately and then joining them by electron beam welding (EBW). With flow forming, both the inner and outer pieces can be formed together, as shown in Fig. 2, making it possible to eliminate one forming operation, EBW, pre-cleaning, weld sputter removal and post-cutting to the specified concentricity.

As illustrated in Fig. 3, the flow forming process performed on a flat piece is completed in three steps.



Press-formed drum Flow-formed drum Straight length A<B (same tooth height)

Fig. 4 Difference in straight length of gear teeth

Another benefit of flow forming is that the die accuracy of the boss outer diameter and seal portion near the spline is transferred unchanged to achieve good concentricity because no cutting is done. There is also no need to remove contamination that was previously caused by EBW splatter.

Additionally, integration of the two drum pieces reduces the diameter by an amount equal to the inner drum thickness, and a straight tooth length can be assured even for low-height teeth because there is little spline deflection. As a result, the clutch drum can be downsized, which translates into a weight reduction (Fig. 4).

また,材料をしごきながら成形することから加工硬化と,ファイバーフロがつながっていることから強度アップも実現できた.

本事例では成形後のボス高さバラツキが課題であったが,金型および成形条件の適正化により解決できた.

また,今後の課題としてはこれを継続拡大し, フローフォーミングの応用技術である増肉・裂 開・肉寄せ加工等による複雑形状の成形に取り組 んでいく.

Fig. 5, Fig. 6にこれまでの実用化事例を示す.



Fig. 5 High clutch drum

3.2. アウトプットシャフトの内スプライン成形 アウトプットシャフトとパークギヤを一体化し, その底付の内スプライン成形をした事例を紹介す る.Fig.7及びFig.8に一体化形状を示す.

この部品の内スプラインは切削(ギヤシェーパ)加工が量産では困難なため、冷鍛成形化に取り組んだ.冷鍛成形上も、一体化されたパークギヤ及び内スプラインの底部及び入口部の形状(含むセンタ成形)の制約により精度確保が難しい条件にあったが、成形方法の工夫及び適正な中間切削加工形状と金型形状の決定等により実現できた.Fig.9に加工工程を示す.

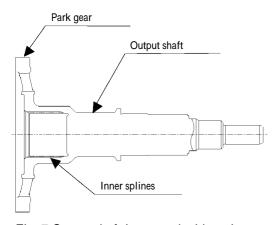


Fig. 7 Output shaft integrated with park gear

Part strength can also be increased because process hardening and fiber flow are related since forming takes place as the material is being drawn.

In this example, boss height variation following flow forming was a problem initially, but it was resolved by optimizing the die and the forming conditions.

An issue for future work is to continue to expand the application of this process to the forming of more intricate shapes through the use of such approaches as increasing the wall thickness, splitting and material collection, which are among the applied techniques of flow forming.

Figures 5 and 6 show examples of parts for which the flow forming process has been implemented so far.



Fig. 6 Torque converter cover

3.2. Forming of inner splines of output shaft

This example concerns the forming of the inner splines inside the output shaft where it is integrated with the park gear. The geometry of this integrated part is shown in Figs. 7 and 8.

We developed a cold forging process for this part because gear shaping of the inner splines would be difficult to accomplish in mass production. Even with cold forging, it was difficult to assure accuracy because of restrictions due to the shapes of the shaft base and shaft hole for the integrated park gear and inner splines, including the center shape. However, it was accomplished by devising an innovative forming method and by determining suitable shapes in the intermediate machining process and an appropriate die geometry, among other measures. The production process of the output shaft is shown in Fig. 9.



Fig. 8 Output shaft integrated with park gear

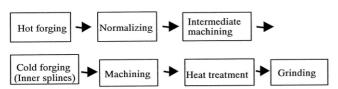


Fig. 9 Sequence of operations for producing output shaft

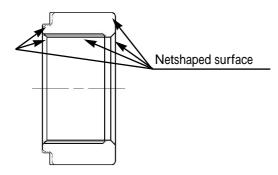


Fig. 10 Inner race of one-way clutch

本事例では冷間鍛造において一般的に使用される燐酸亜鉛皮膜処理にかわり冷鍛用潤滑油を使用し、Fig. 9の中間切削加工以降の機械加工ライン内にスプライン冷鍛成形工程を設定しインライン成形化した.

課題として冷鍛用潤滑油化により潤滑不足に起因する金型寿命の低下が考えられたが,潤滑切れを起こさない塗布方法や金型の開発により解決した.

以上の内スプライン成形の機械加工ライン内での実施により,工程の集約効果によるリードタイム短縮と素材から完成品迄のトータルの低コスト化が可能となった。

3.3. インナーレースの端面・スプラインのネットシェイプ化トルクコンバータのインナーレースの端面と内スプラインをネットシェイプ化した事例を紹介する、Fig.10及びFig. 11にその形状を示す、

この部品は、従来、熱間鍛造品から総削り(旋削1 旋削2 ブローチ 浸炭 仕上げ旋削)されていたが、底付スプライン化し冷間鍛造により両端面と内 径面取りを含む内スプラインをネットシェイプ化することにより、後工程の機械加工工程を3工程省略 し浸炭後の1クランプの仕上げ旋削のみとし、機械加工設備投資の削減と低コスト化ができた。

本事例では,スプライン諸元の寸法精度とともに,組み付けされる相手部品のステータとの摺動面となるネットシェイプ化端面の面粗度及び端面振れの精度を確保することが課題であったが,冷間鍛造工程・設備及び金型の対策により解決した.



Fig. 11 Inner race of one-way clutch

In this example, a cold forging lubricant is used in place of the zinc-phosphating process normally employed in cold forging. A cold forging process has been provided in the machining line after the intermediate machining operation (Fig. 9) to accomplish in-line forming of the inner splines.

It was thought that one potential issue might be a shortening of die life due to insufficient lubrication as a result of adopting the cold forging lubricant. However, that issue was resolved by developing a new die and a method of coating the die to avoid insufficient lubrication.

Cold forging the inner splines on the machining line made it possible to concentrate the manufacturing operations, resulting in shorter lead times and a total cost reduction throughout the entire process from the raw material stage to the finished part.

3.3. Netshaping of end faces of inner race and inner splines

This example concerns netshaping of the end faces of the inner race and inner splines of the one-way clutch in the torque converter. The part geometry is shown in Figs. 10 and 11.

This part was previously produced by hot forging followed by overall machining, including first turning, second turning, broaching, carburizing and finish turning. However, netshaping of the non-perforated inner splines is now accomplished by cold forging, including both end faces of the inner race and chamfering of the inner diameter. As a result, three of the subsequent machining operations have been eliminated, leaving only the finish turning process done in one fixturing following carburizing. This has reduced the investment in machining facilities and lowered the part cost.

In this example, the issues included assuring the dimensional accuracy of the spline specifications and the surface finish and accuracy of the netshaped end face that serves as the sliding surface of the stator of the mating part with which it is assembled. These issues were resolved by the measures adopted for the cold forging process, facilities and the die.

3.4. ハイクラッチハブの冷鍛一体化

ハイクラッチハブを冷間鍛造により一体成形化した事例を紹介する.Fig.12に一体化した形状を示す.

従来は、別々に成形、機械加工された2つの構成部品(ハイクラッチハブとスリーブキャリヤ)をEBW溶接で接合していた、本部品は外歯外径が110と大きいため、冷間鍛造での一体成形と歯形精度の実現が課題であったが、冷間鍛造工程及び金型の対策により達成し、後工程の機械加工工程の一部廃止・集約と溶接レス化により大幅な低コスト化が可能となった。

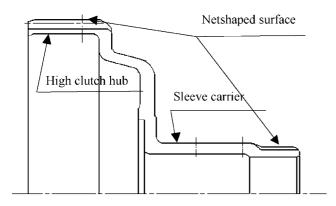


Fig. 12 One-piece high clutch hub

4. まとめ

以上,いくつかのネットシェイプ化取り組み事例を紹介した.フローフォーミング工法によるクラッチドラムの成形技術を確立し,また冷間鍛造についてはアウトプットシャフトの機械加工ライン内でのスプライン成形,インナーレースのネットシェイプ化及び大きなハイクラッチハブの冷鍛一体化を実現できた.

今後の取り組み課題として,塑性加工の強みを生かしてAT部品の低コスト化と小型・軽量化に寄与できるように,一体化も含めたネットシェイプ化をさらに継続,拡大し取り組んでいく.

具体的にはフローフォーミング工法の応用技術である増肉,裂開,肉寄せ等の適用による複雑な形状のネットシェイプ成形,また冷間鍛造では上記を拡大しスプライン部品,プーリ等の大物部品及び内へリカル歯部品等のネットシェイプ化に取り組んでいく.

5.おわりに

最後に,上記に紹介したネットシェイプ化取り 組み事例の開発,実用化に際し,ご協力を頂いた 関連設備・金型・部品メーカ並びに社内関係部署 の方々に深く感謝の意を表します.

3.4. Integrated cold forging of the high clutch hub

This example concerns the integrated forming of the high clutch hub by cold forging. The integrated part geometry is shown in Fig. 12.

In the past, the high clutch hub and sleeve carrier were formed and machined separately as the two constituent parts and then joined by EBW. Because the outer tooth diameter of this part is a large 110 mm, one issue involved in the integrated forming of this part by cold forging was to achieve the desired tooth shape accuracy. That was accomplished by the measures applied to the cold forging process and the die, making it possible to eliminate or concentrate some of the subsequent machining operations and to do away with welding, thereby achieving a substantial cost reduction.

4. Condusion

This article has described several examples of the netshaping of AT parts. A flow forming technology has been established for the clutch drum, and cold forging has been applied to form the inner splines of the output shaft on the machining line, to netshape the inner race of the one-way clutch, and to produce the large high clutch hub in an integrated operation.

The next issue to be addressed is to continue to expand netshaping further, including parts integration, so as to contribute to reducing the cost, size and weight of AT parts by taking advantage of the strengths of plastic working techniques.

Specifically, efforts will be made to apply netshaping to intricate part geometries through the use of such approaches as increasing the wall thickness, splitting, material collection and other applied techniques of flow forming. In addition, efforts will also be made to achieve netshaping by expanding the above-mentioned cold forging process to even larger parts, including splined parts, pulleys and the like, as well as to inner helical gears and other parts.

5. Acknowledgments

Finally, the authors would like to thank many individuals at the manufacturers of the related facilities, dies and parts and in the departments concerned at JATCO for their cooperation in connection with the development and implementation of the netshaping processes described here.

Authors

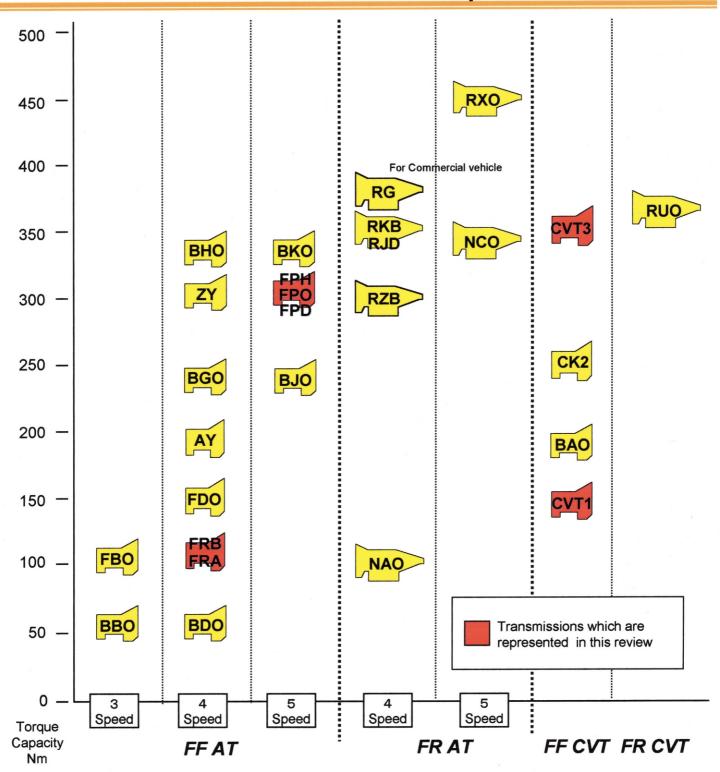




Yoshimi YAMAUCHI

Takuya YAMAZAKI

Product Line-up



Ford向けFF車用5速AT JF506E-V (FPH)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-V(FPH) 5-speed AT for Ford Application

多賀 正一* Shoichi TAGA

抄録 FPO系列の一つとしてFord モンデオに搭載されたJF506E-V型自動変速機以下FPHという)は,1年9ヶ月の短期開発にもかかわらず,超扁平トルクコンバータなど,当社初の新技術を採用し,Ford Standardに適合した欧州市場向けの5速ATである.V6 2.5LガソリンとI4 2.0TDCi ディーゼルの2機種への適応で,ディーゼル向けにはコーストでの応答性向上としてこれもFF車用では当社初となるコーストスリップロックアップを採用した.

Summary The JF506E-V (FPH) is a 5-speed AT that meets Ford's standards for use in the European market and is featured on the Ford Mondeo. As one member of the FPO series of ATs, the FPH incorporates an ultra-flat torque converter, a sealed differential and other new first-time technologies at JATCO, despite having been developed in a short period of just 21 months. It can be teamed with two types of engines, a 2.5L gasoline V6 or a 2.0L TDCi inline-4 diesel. It is JATCO's first front-drive AT to adopt coasting slip lockup control, which was applied to improve coasting responsiveness for application to diesel-engine cars.

1. はじめに

前輪駆動用5速AT JF506E型の6社目の適用機種としてFord モンデオ(Fig.1)のマイナーチェンジより搭載されたFPHは、欧州向けとして、ディーゼルエンジン、V6ガソリンに、また、台湾・日本向けとしてV6ガソリンに設定された、Ford Motor Company様へのユニット提供は、旧JATCOからの提供以来、実に23年ぶりとなる、再来のお客様である.

1. Introduction

With the application of the FPH to the facelifted Ford Mondeo (Fig. 1), the JF506E series of 5-speed ATs for front-wheel-drive cars has now been adopted by six automakers. For use on European cars, the FPH can be mated to either a diesel engine or a V6 gasoline engine, while the version for application to cars in Taiwan or Japan can be teamed with a V6 gasoline engine. The provision of the FPH to Ford Motor Company has made the automaker a repeat customer again for the first time in as many as 23 years, including supply from the former JATCO Corp.



Fig. 1 Ford Mondeo

^{*} 第二商品開発本部 Product Development Center No. 2

2. 開発の狙い

車両適合と合わせ,次の新規項目を開発の柱として開発を行なった。

- (1)新型超扁平トルクコンバータ
- (2)モジュールUPアイドラギヤ
- (3)コーストスリップロックアップ

3. 構造と仕様

3.1.構造

断面図をFig. 2に示す.

車両搭載のため、外観形状の変更を行なったが、内部のパワートレインについては、共用化による原価低減を図った、モジュールUPアイドラギヤの採用に対して、搭載性と重量増加を抑えるため、ハウジングの形状の最適化を行なった。

エンジンとの結合剛性確保のため,NASTRAN解析を用いてハウジング剛性の向上を行い,最適化を図った.

3.2. 主要諸元

主要諸元をTable 1に示す.欧州での走行条件を考え,最高速と低中速走行性能の確保に留意した諸元とした.

2. Development Aims

The following new items were the major focus of the development work, along with making the FPH compatible with the vehicle.

- (1) New ultra-flat torque converter
- (2) Larger idler gear module
- (3) Coasting slip lockup control

3. Structure and Specifications

3.1. Structure

A cross-sectional view of the FPH is shown in Fig. 2. The external shape was changed to facilitate mounting in the vehicle, but the internal powertrain is shared with other series members so as to reduce the cost. In connection with the adoption of a larger idler gear module, the housing geometry was optimized for better mountability and to hold down the weight increase.

To ensure sufficient coupling rigidity with the engine, NASTRAN analysis was used to improve and optimize the rigidity of the housing.

3.2. Major Specifications

The major technical specifications of the FPH are given in Table 1. These specifications were carefully selected to secure the vehicle's top speed and driving performance at low to intermediate speeds, in consideration of the driving conditions in Europe.

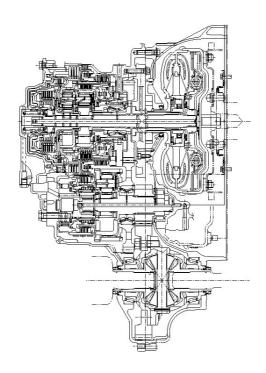


Fig. 2 Cross-sectional view of JF506E-V

	Model		Mondeo 2.5L V6	Mondeo 2.0L	Mondeo 2.0L	
Vehicle	Drive System		2WD	←	←	
	Weight (kg)		2,190	2,230	←	
venicie	Engine type		Duratec 2.5L	Puma Diesel 2.0L 115 PS	Puma Diesel 2.0L 130 PS	
	Max. power ((DIN)	170 PS / 6,100	115 PS / 4,000	130 PS / 3,800	
	Max. torque	(DIN)	222 Nm / 2,746	280 Nm / 1,900	310 Nm / 1,800 - 2,100	
	Torque conv	erter	EFJ	A	AD	
	Gear ratio	1st	3.801	←		
		2nd	2.131	+	_	
		3rd	1.364	+	_	
AT		4th	0.935	←		
AI		5th	0.685	+	_	
		Rev	2.970	+	_	
	FDR		3.712	3.491		
	Center distance (mm)		200	←		
	Dry weight (kg)		96	9	95	

Table 1 Technical specification

4. 新規開発項目

4.1.新型超扁平トルクコンバータ

搭載性確保のため、新規に超扁平トルクコンバータを開発し、採用した. Fig. 3にトルクコンバータの性能を示す. 薄型化を図りながら、ほぼ従来型トルクコンバータと同等の性能を確保できた.

4.2.モジュールUPアイドラギヤ

ギヤノイズ対策として,アイドラとリダクションギヤのモジュールを拡大し車両の暗騒音特性上,最適な領域を選択する方法を採用した.この方法により,騒音を低減した.

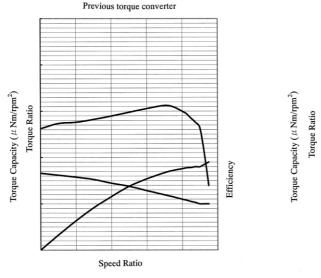
4. Newly Developed Items

4.1. New ultra-flat torque converter

A new ultra-flat torque converter was developed and adopted to ensure vehicle mountability. The performance curves of the new torque converter are shown in Fig. 3. Despite its flatter shape, this torque converter provides performance nearly equal to that of the previous torque converter.

4.2. Larger idler gear module

As one measure against gear noise, the module of the idler gear and reduction gear was increased and a method was adopted that allows the optimum region to be selected with respect to the background noise characteristics of the vehicle. This method works to reduce the noise level.



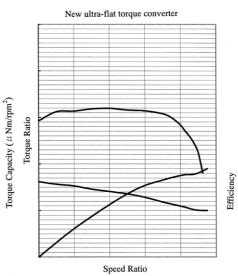


Fig. 3 Torque converter performance curves

4.3.コーストスリップロックアップ

新型超扁平トルクコンバータの採用で,コースト時のトルク容量の不足が課題であった.トルク容量不足は,コースト状態からの再加速時でレスポンス遅れを発生させる.また,コーストロックアップでは,コースト状態での変速後のトルクコンバータ再ロックアップ時のショックが問題となる.このため,コーストスリップロックアップを採用し,レスポンス確保と再ロックアップ時のショック対策を図った.

Fig. 4, 5に足離し変速後の比較を示す.アンロックアップ状態からスリップロックアップ状態に移行し,ロックアップに対して,ショックが抑えられていることが分かる.

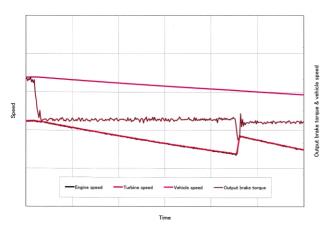


Fig. 4 Coasting lockup performance of previous unit

5. その他の改善項目

FPO系制御として採用されている付加制御について,機能向上させて採用した.その項目を次に示す.

(1)Fast off制御

ドライバがアクセルペダルをある一定以上の早さで離した場合,足を離した時のギア位置をホールドする制御である.ドライバが急な減速を望んでいると判断し,アップシフトを抑制してエンジンブレーキをかけることでドライバの意志に合致させることを目的としている.

- (2)アイドルニュートラル制御
- (3)アップヒルモード制御
- (4)ダウンヒル制御
- (5)高温制御

4.3. Coasting slip lockup control

With the adoption of the new ultra-flat torque converter, one issue that had to be addressed was insufficient torque capacity when coasting. Insufficient torque capacity causes a response lag when the driver accelerates again from a coasting state. Another problem was the shock that occurred when the torque converter locked up again after the transmission shifted in the coasting state under coasting lockup operation. These issues were resolved by adopting coasting slip lockup control, which ensures good response and alleviates the shock when the torque converter locks up again.

Figures 4 and 5 compare the performance following a power-off shift. A transition is made from an unlocked condition to a slip lockup state, which works to suppress the shock when the torque converter locks up.

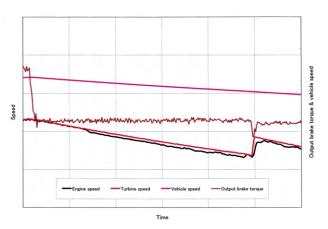


Fig. 5 Performance with coasting slip lockup control

5. Other Improvements

The additional controls previously incorporated in the FPO control system were further improved in performance and adopted for the FPH. The control features are noted below.

- (1) Fast lift-off control: When the driver lifts off on the accelerator pedal faster than a certain predetermined speed, this control serves to hold the gear position at the moment the accelerator is released. The system judges that the driver desires to decelerate quickly and applies engine braking by inhibiting an upshift, thereby providing performance intended to match the driver's wish.
- (2) Idle neutral control
- (3) Uphill mode control
- (4) Downhill control
- (5) High-temperature control

また,コントロールバルブのソレノイド追加による制御性の向上と合わせ,32bitのATCUの採用により,変速性能の大幅なレベルアップを図ることができた.

6. あとがき

フィンランドのロバニエミの寒地実験,イタリアのナルド地方の熱地実験,オーストリアのグロスグロックナーの登坂実験,等々,欧州での走行に合わせた走行実験と,富士川テストコースでの変速性能実験で十分な走行を行い,お客様の要求にあった性能に仕上げることができた.

最後にFPHの開発に協力を頂いた Ford Motor Company 様, JEG, JEG-UK, 及び, 社内関係部署の方々に厚く感謝する.

Shift performance was also substantially improved by adopting a 32-bit AT control unit (ATCU) together with improvement of controllability by adding a solenoid to the control valves.

6. Conclusion

Extensive driving tests matching the driving conditions in Europe were conducted, including coldweather testing in Rovaniemi, Finland, hot-weather testing in Italy's Nardo region and hill-climbing tests on the Grossglockner highway in Austria. In addition, ample shift performance tests were also conducted at the Fujikawa Proving Ground, resulting in the development of an AT that satisfies the customer's requirements.

In conclusion, the author would like to thank many individuals at Ford Motor Company, JEG, JEG-UK and in related departments at JATCO for their cooperation in connection with the development of the FPH.

Author



Shoichi TAGA

FF車用4速AT JF405E-G (FRB)の紹介

Introducing the JF405E-G (FRB) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

山﨑 章* Akira YAMAZAKI

抄 録 JF405E-G型自動変速機は,FF用4速ATであるJF405E-H型をベ-スにGM大宇オート&テクノロジー様の車両「Matiz」用に適用された(Fig. 1)

本報では,この自動変速機の適用開発技術の一部を 紹介する. **Summary** The JF405E-G automatic transmission (AT) was newly developed based on the JF405E-H 4-speed AT for front-wheel-drive cars and was adopted on the Matiz car model (Fig. 1) produced by GM Daewoo Auto & Technology Company. This article describes some of the application engineering techniques that were utilized for this new AT.

1. はじめに

今回新規適用開発されたJF405E-G型自動変速機 (以下本ATと略す)は,

- (1)FEM解析による部品強度設計
- (2)ギア諸元変更によるギアノイズ評価改善
- (3)シミュレ・ション解析による変速性能向上等の各種解析技術及び適用開発技術を活用し,海外カ・メ・カの車両スペックに迅速かつ最適に適用させることができた.

本報ではそれらの解析技術及び適用開発技術を 紹介する

1. Introduction

The newly implemented JF405E-G 4-speed AT was quickly and optimally adapted to the car specifications of an overseas automaker by making full use of various analytical tools and application engineering techniques, including:

- (1) Part strength design based on finite element analysis (FEA)
- (2) Improvement of gear noise evaluation by changing the gear specifications
- (3) Improvement of shift performance based on simulation analysis

This article describes the analytical tools and application engineering techniques that were employed for this AT.



Fig. 1 Matiz

^{*} 第二商品設計部 Product Engineering Department No. 2

2. FEM解析による部品強度設計

エンジンとATはマウント部品により車体に取り付けられており、このマウント部品は車両の乗り心地や音振性能に大きな影響を与える重要な部品である.このマウント部品をATに取り付けるために、カ・メ・カからマウントブラケット取付位置、固定方法等について要求提示がある.弊社ではこの要求に従い、該当するAT部品にブラケット取付用ボス及びそのボス補強リブを設定するとともにそれらの強度設計を行う.

本ATではサイドカバ - 部品に専用ボス3箇所と補強リブを追加設定したので,関連部品に対しFEMによる強度解析と実機の応力測定による検証を実施した.Fig. 2は今回のFEMの解析モデルと応力解析結果の一例を示す.Fig. 2より色の異なる部分に応力が集中することが明確となり,その部分の肉厚アップ等の補強を行うことができた.

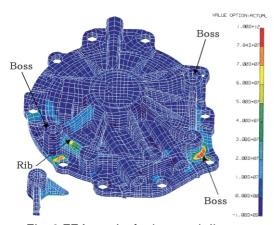


Fig. 2 FEA results for boss and rib stress

3. ギア諸元変更によるギアノイズ評価改善

3.1. 起振源による対策

ギアノイズは、起振源であるAT内部のギア噛み合い部分と、起振源からの振動を車両に伝える伝達系部分に分離し対策検討が必要となる.

今回はAT内部のアウトプットギアとアイドラギアの噛み合い部に着目した起振源による対策を実施したので紹介する.

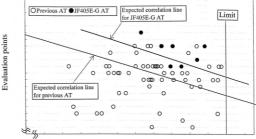
3.2. AT単体と実車のノイズ評価の相関確認

起振源によるギアノイズ対策で第1に重要となる点は、ATユニット単体でのノイズ評価と車両でのノイズ評価との相関をとることである。本ATでは対象ギア部直上での放射音レベルと車両での評価ポイントで相関確認した。

2. Part Strength Design Based on FEA

The engine and AT are attached to the car body by means of mounts. These mounts are important parts that significantly influence a vehicle's ride quality and noise and vibration performance. Car manufacturers indicate their requests concerning the location of the brackets for attaching the mounts to an AT, the method of securing the brackets and so on. In line with an automaker's requests, we determine the bosses for attaching the brackets of the AT concerned and the boss reinforcement ribs and also execute their strength design.

For the JF405E-G AT, dedicated bosses were provided at three places on the side of the transmission housing along with boss reinforcement ribs. These changes were then examined by using FEA to analyze their effect on the strength of related parts and by making stress measurements with an actual transmission. Figure 2 shows the FEA model used and one example of the stress analysis results. This analysis revealed the places where stress concentrated, indicated by the color differences in Fig. 2, making it possible to reinforce those areas, such as by increasing the wall thickness there.



Radiation noise level measured at 7cm above AT

Fig. 3 Correlation between AT noise and vehicle noise evaluation

3. Improvement of Gear Noise Evaluation by Changing Gear Specifications

3.1. Measures against vibration sources

In examining measures for addressing gear noise, it is necessary to separate gear noise caused by gear meshing inside the AT from noise produced in the process of transmitting vibration from its source to the vehicle. The following discussion describes the measures applied to this AT, focusing on the meshing of the output gear and idle gear in the transmission as the source of vibration.

3.2. Verification of correlation between transmission and vehicle noise evaluations

The first important point in reducing gear noise by addressing the sources of vibration is to correlate an evaluation of AT noise alone with an evaluation of vehicle noise. It was confirmed that the radiation noise level directly above the target gears in this AT correlated with certain points in the vehicle noise evaluation.

Fig. 3はファイナルテスト時AT直上7cmでの放射音レベルと車両での評価ポイントとの相関を旧仕様と対策仕様とで確認した結果を示す. Fig. 3より旧仕様及び対策仕様それぞれについて推定相関線を確認できた.この結果から,本ATではユニット単体の放射音レベル管理により実車でのギアノイズ管理ができることがわかった. ただし発生ノイズが車両側伝達系部分に大きく起因する場合は,ATユニット単体での放射音レベルのみ管理しても実車との相関を得られない.

3.3. ギアモジュールアップによるギアノイズ評価改善 実車でのギアノイズ評価でもうひとつ重要な点 は,走行中の車両各部から発生するその他の騒音 レベル(暗騒音レベルという)と対象ギアのノイズ レベルとの大小関係である.対象ギアのノイズレ ベルが暗騒音レベルよりも小さい場合,ギアノイ ズは暗騒音にマスキングされ、乗員には感知され ない.逆に対象ギアノイズが暗騒音レベルより大 きい場合,その差の大きさだけ乗員はギアノイズ の大きさを感知する. Fig. 4は音圧ピークをもつ特 定ギア噛み合い周波数域に対して測定した車速に 対する暗騒音と旧仕様及び対策仕様での音圧レベ ル結果を示す.Fig. 4より車速が増加するに従い, 車両の暗騒音レベルも増加することがわかる.従 ってほぼ同じギアノイズの音圧ピ - クレベルをも っていてもその発生車速が高いほど暗騒音レベル との差は小さくなり,乗員のギアノイズ評価は良 好となる.

本ATではギアモジュ・ルをアップすることで,特定噛み合い周波数領域におけるギア1次かみあい成分の音圧ピ・ク発生車速を高速側に移行させることができた.これにより乗員のギアノイズ評価は改善した.

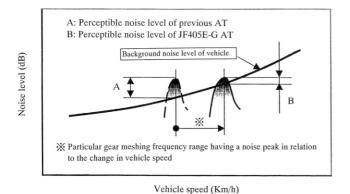


Fig. 4 Background noise and noise peak in relation to vehicle speed

Figure 3 shows the correlation between the radiation noise level measured 7 cm above the AT in the final test and vehicle noise evaluation points. The results are compared for the previous AT specification and the improved JF405E-G specification. It is seen from the figure that the expected correlation line was confirmed for each AT. These results indicated that gear noise in the vehicle evaluation could be managed by controlling the level of noise radiated from the JF405E-G AT itself. However, it should be noted that simply controlling the noise radiated from the AT alone will not provide a good correlation with an evaluation of vehicle noise, in cases where a large portion of the overall noise stems from the routes by which vibration is transmitted to the vehicle.

3.3. Improvement of gear noise evaluation using a larger gear tooth module

Another important point when evaluating gear noise in a vehicle is the magnitude of the target gear noise level in relation to the noise level (referred to collectively as the background noise level) produced by other parts during driving. If the noise level of the target gears is lower than the background noise level, it is masked by the latter and is imperceptible to the vehicle occupants. Conversely, when the target gear noise is greater than the background noise level, the magnitude of that difference alone is what the occupants perceive as the gear noise level.

Figure 4 shows the sound pressure levels measured for the previous AT and the JF405E-G AT along with the background noise level as a function of the vehicle speed. The measurements were made in a particular gear meshing frequency range that has a sound pressure peak in relation to the change in vehicle speed. The results indicate that the background noise level of the vehicle also rose with increasing vehicle speed. Accordingly, even though the sound pressure of the gear noise peaked at the same level for both transmissions, the difference between that level and the background noise level decreased as the vehicle speed increased, resulting in a good gear noise evaluation by the occupants for the JF405E-G AT.

By increasing the size of the gear tooth module in this AT, the vehicle speed at which the sound pressure of the first-order gear meshing component peaks in this particular meshing frequency range was shifted to a higher vehicle speed. That had the effect of improving the occupants' evaluation of gear noise.

4. シミュレーション解析による変速性能向上

ATの変速性能は車両の発進タイム,加速タイムなどの動力性能や燃費性能に大きな影響を与える重要なアイテムである.

この変速性能に関わるAT仕様としては,トルクコンバ-タやファイナルギア等のハ-ド部品の仕様と,シフトスケジュ-ル,ロックアップスケジュ-ル,油圧等のATCUソフトデ-タの仕様がある.これらの各仕様を最適設計するために,シミュレ-ション解析を行い,それぞれの寄与度を明確にし最終仕様を設定した.

今回実施したシミュレ・ション解析結果の一例としてFig. 5にモ・ド燃費シミュレ・ション結果を示す・横軸には経過時間、縦軸には上から順に変速ギア段、スロットル開度、車速、燃料消費率を示す・燃料消費率を下げるようシフトスケジュ・ルやロックアップスケジュ・ル等を修正し、最適仕様を設定した・

4. Improvement of Shift Performance Based on Simulation Analyses

The shift performance of an AT is a key factor that greatly influences a vehicle's power performance, including standing-start and quarter-mile acceleration times, and fuel consumption. Both the hardware and software specifications of an AT are involved in shift performance. The former include the specifications of the torque converter, final drive gear and other parts, while the latter include the specifications of the AT control unit (ATCU), such as the shift schedule, lockup schedule and hydraulic pressures. In order to execute the optimum design for each specification, simulation analyses were conducted to clarify the contribution of each specification to shift performance, and the final specifications were determined on the basis of the results.

As one example of the results of the simulation analyses conducted in this work, Fig. 5 shows the simulation data for fuel consumption under Japan's 10-15 test mode. From the top, the vertical axis shows the transmission gear range, throttle valve opening (TVO), vehicle speed and fuel consumption rate in relation to elapsed time indicated along the horizontal axis. The optimum specifications were determined by changing the shift schedule, lockup schedule and other items so as to reduce the fuel consumption rate.

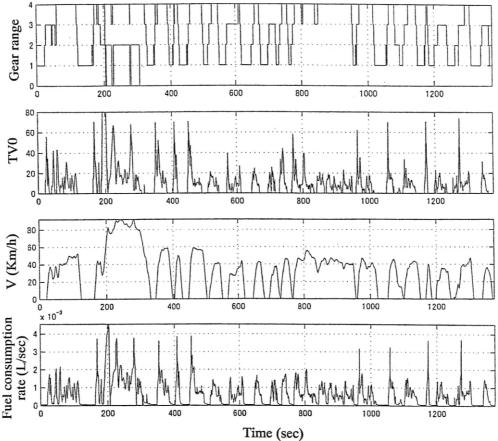


Fig. 5 Simulation of fuel consumption

5.終わりに

これら最新の適用開発技術を活用することで, 短期間でムダのない開発ができた.

最後に本自動変速機の開発にご協力頂いたGM大宇オート&テクノロジー様ほか社内外関係会社の方々に紙面を借りて厚く御礼申し上げます.

5. Conclusion

By making full use of the latest application engineering techniques described here, the JF405E-G AT was developed efficiently in a short period of time.

Finally, the author would like to take this opportunity to thank various individuals at GM Daewoo Auto & Technology Company, at other related companies and within JATCO for their tremendous cooperation in connection with the development of this AT.

Author



Akira YAMAZAKI

FF車用4速AT JF404E-W (FDO) の紹介

Introducing the JF404E-W (FDO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

JF404E-W(FDO)型自動変速機は、従来2個使っていたシンプソンタイプのプラネタリギアをラビニョウタイプにすることで1個とし、ワンウェイクラッチも2個から1個にすることで、軽量、コンパクトを実現した、小型の前輪駆動乗用車のための4速自動変速機です。95年にVolkswagen様の Poloに初めて採用され、2000年12月にはSKODA 様のFABIAにも拡大採用されています。

更に2002年1月にはフルモデルチェンジした Volkswagen様のPoloにも継続採用されました. The JF404E0W (FDO) AT features a lightweight, compact design as a result of adopting one Rabinow planetary gearset instead of the two Simpson planetary gearsets used previously and also reducing the number of one-way clutches from two to one. This 4-speed AT is designed for use on front-drive compact cars. It was first adopted on the Volkswagen Polo in 1995 and its application was expanded to the Skoda Fabia in December 2000. Moreover, it has continued to be used on the new generation of the Volkswagen Polo that was released in January 2002.

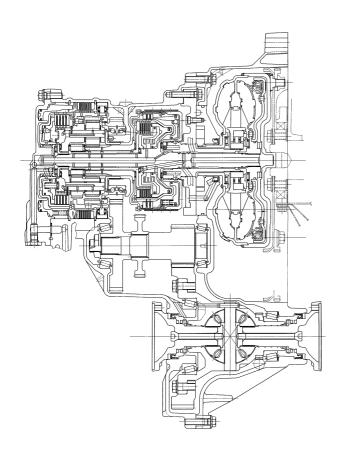


Table 1 Specifications

150 Nm

Max. input torque

Max. input speed 7,000 rpm Max. vehicle weight (GVW) 1,550 kg Control system Electronic 215 mm dia. Torque converter 2.875 1st 1.512 2nd Gear ratio 1.000 3rd 4th 0.726 2.656 Rev. 3.47~4.38 Final drive gear ratio No. of selector positions 7(P, R, N, D, 3, 2, 1) 360.8 mm Overall length Center distance between engine and 174 mm differential Dry weight 60 kg

Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

特 徴

SKODA Fabiaおよび新型Poloと現行Poloとの最大の違いがプラットホームでした.このプラットホームの違いに対応するため,ATとして次の変更を行いました.

(1)ATの搭載性の向上

ケースとコンバータハウジングの結合ボルト 用ボス位置変更,スイングサポート用ボスの面 取りを追加する等の変更を行い,車両搭載性向 トを図りました.

(2)ノイズの低減

車両暗騒音の低減に対応できるよう,オイルポンプ,アウトプットギアに工夫をし,ノイズ低減を図りました.

(3)セレクトショック向上

- ・ロークラッチディッシュプレートの荷重を下 げることにより,D-Rセレクト時にロークラッチ圧を解放する過程の油圧を高くしました。
 これによりロークラッチの完全解放タイミングが遅れて,D-Rセレクトショックが改善されました。
- ・R-Dセレクト時の油圧制御に改良を加えることで,R-Dショックを改善しました。

Major Features

The biggest differences between the Skoda Fabia and the previous and current generations of the Polo are in their platforms. The following changes were made to the AT to accommodate these platform differences.

(1) Improvement of AT mountability

The bosses of the bolts that couple the case and the torque converter housing were repositioned and chamfering was added to the swing support bosses, among other changes, to improve vehicle mountability.

(2) Noise reduction

Steps were taken to reduce the noise of the oil pump and output gear in line with the reduction of overall vehicle noise.

(3) Improvement of selection quality

The load of the low clutch dish plate was reduced so as to raise the pressure in the process of releasing the low clutch pressure when a D-R selection is made. This works to delay the timing for full release of the low clutch and thereby improves D-R selection quality.

Pressure control at the time of an R-D selection was further improved to enhance R-D selection quality.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Fabia

Typical models fitted with the JF404E-W (FDO) AT



Polo

FF車用4速AT JF405E-H (FRO)の紹介

Introducing the JF405E-H (FRO) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

'98年10月にスズキ(株)様のワゴンR RRに初めて搭載されたJF405E-H(FRO)型自動変速機は,世界トップレベルの小型・軽量で,小型乗用車にジャストフィットしたFF自動変速機です.'02年1月には,アルトラパンにも拡大採用されています.

The JF405E-H (FRO) AT is one of the world's most compact and lightest ATs, making it an ideal gearbox for small cars. Designed for application to front-wheel-drive cars, it was first fitted to Suzuki Motor Corporation's WagonR RR in October 1998. Application was further expanded to the ALTO Lapin in January 2002.

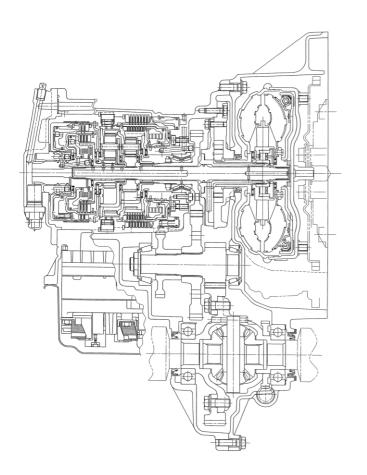


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque	110 Nm		
Max. input speed	7,800 rpm		
Max. vehicle wei	1,235 kg		
Control system		Electronic	
Torque converter		186 mm dia.	
	1st	2.914	
	2nd	1.525	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000	
	4th	0.725	
	Rev.	2.642	
Final drive gear r	atio	4.017~5.804	
No. of selector po	6(P,R,N,D,2,L)		
Overall length	359.9 mm		
Center distance b and differential	etween engine	172 mm	
Dry weight		45.7 kg	

特 徴

- (1)部品点数を削減して小型・軽量化を実現しています.
- (2)小型なトルクコンバ タ で高性能を達成しています.
- (3)簡素で小型な油圧制御装置を使って,最適な油 圧で変速機を制御しています.さらに,アイド ルニュ・トラル制御,スリップロックアップ制 御,登降坂制御が可能です.

Major Features

- (1) A compact, lightweight package has been achieved by reducing the part count.
- (2) High performance has been attained by adopting a compact torque converter.
- (3) A simple and compact hydraulic pressure control system is used to provide the optimum pressure for controlling the AT. Moreover, it also facilitates idle neutral control, slip lockup control and prevention of hunting when climbing hills.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the JF405E-H (FRO) AT



ALTO Lapin

FF車用4速AT JF405E-Q(FRA)の紹介

Introducing the JF405E-Q (FRA) 4-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

'00年3月に,韓国の現代自動車様ATOZ/起亜自動車様VISTOの0.8L&1.0L NA車両に搭載されたJF405E-Q(FRA)型自動変速機は,韓国軽自動車初の4速自動変速機であり,韓国市場だけでなく欧州,中東の各地域にも輸出されています.

また,'00年11月には,0.8L TURBO車両にも拡大 採用されています. In March 2000, the JF405E-Q (FRA) AT was adopted on the Hyundai Atoz and the Kia Visto, both of which are available with a 0.8-liter or a 1.0-liter naturally aspirated engine. This unit is the first 4-speed AT to be used on Korean minicars. In addition to the South Korean market, it is also exported to Europe and the Middle East. Application was further expanded to include a 0.8-liter turbocharged model in November 2000.

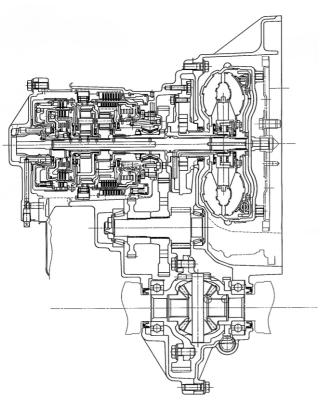


Table 1 Specifications

98 Nm

Max. input torque

and differential

Dry weight

Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

特 徴

- (1) 部品点数を削減して小型・軽量化を実現しています.
- (2) 小型なトルクコンバータで高性能を達成して います.
- (3) 簡素で小型な油圧制御装置を使って,最適な油圧で変速機を制御しています.さらに,最適燃費線を配慮したシフトスケジュールの採用,ロックアップ領域の拡大により,動力性能の最適化だけでなく燃費向上も図っています.

Major Features

- (1) A compact, lightweight AT was achieved by reducing the part count.
- (2) A compact torque converter was adopted to obtain high performance.
- (3) A small, simple hydraulic pressure control system is used to provide the optimum pressure for controlling the transmission. Moreover, a shift schedule designed for optimum fuel economy has been adopted along with expanding the range of lockup operation. As a result, not only does this AT provide optimum power performance, it also improves fuel economy as well.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Atoz

Typical models fitted with the JF405E-Q (FRA) AT



Visto

FF車用5速AT JF506 E-R (FPO)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-R (FPO) 5-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

JF506E-R型自動変速機は,'99年7月にRover MG Group様のRover75とLand Rover Group様のFreelander に初めて搭載されました.'01年7月にはRover MG Group様のRover75 Tourerに拡大採用されました.

The JF506E-R 5-speed AT was first adopted on Rover MG Group's Rover 75 in July 1999 and on Land Rover Group's Freelander in August 2000. Its application was further expanded to Rover MG Group's Rover 75 Tourer in July 2001.

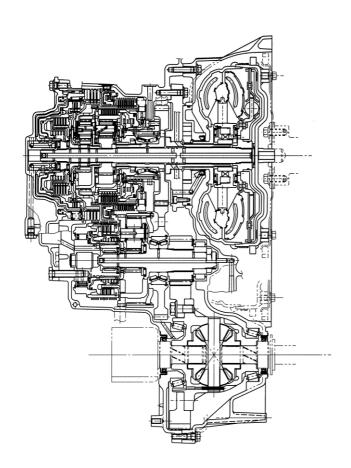


Fig.1 Main cross section

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input t	orque	310 Nm		
Max. input s	speed	7,000 rpm		
Max. vehicle w	eight (GVW)	1,900 kg		
Control syst	em	Electronic		
Torque conv	erter	250 m	m dia.	
	1st	3.474	3.801	
	2nd	1.948	2.131	
	3rd	1.247	1.364	
Gear ratio	4th	0.854	0.935	
	5th	0.685	0.685	
	Rev.	2.714	2.970	
Final drive	gear ratio	2.9~4.1		
No. of selec	et positions	7 (P, R, N, D, 4, 3, 2)		
Dry weight		95 kg		

特 徴

- (1)1個のワンウェイクラッチ,超扁平トルクコン バータの採用により,車両への搭載性を良くし ています。
- (2)ワイドな5速ギアの採用により,高い燃費性能とパワフルな加速性能を両立しています.
- (3)4WD用のトランスファと結合され,本格的なオフロード走行に耐えるよう,高剛性な箱物構造を採用しています.
- (4)ATFを精度良く注入でき,レベルゲージが不要な,フローチュープ方式を採用しています.
- (5)マニュアルシフト" Command Shift "を採用して, スポーティなドライブやオフロードでの確実な コントロールを実現しています.
- (6)登坂道での頻繁な変速を抑えたり,降坂路で最 適なエンジンブレーキを与えるAdaptive shift制 御を採用しています.
- (7)その他にも次の制御を採用しています.
 - ・Normal, Sport, Snowの3種類の走行モードが選択できるモードスイッチ
 - ・変速ショックの経時変化を抑える変速時間学 習制御
 - ・変速ショックのばらつきを抑える変速時油圧 のリアルタイムフィードバック制御

Major Features

- (1) Vehicle mountability was improved by adopting a single one-way clutch and an ultra-flat torque converter.
- (2) The adoption of five speeds with a wider ratio range achieves both excellent fuel economy and powerful acceleration performance.
- (3) A high-rigidity case construction has been adopted to withstand true off-road driving conditions when coupled with the 4WD transfer case.
- (4) A flow-tube system is used that enables the AT fluid to be filled accurately without using a level gauge.
- (5) A manual shift mode (CommandShift) is provided that delivers sporty driving performance and reliable control in off-road driving.
- (6) Adaptive shift control has been adopted to suppress frequent shifting when climbing hills and to provide optimum engine braking on downhill grades.
- (7) The JF506E-R also incorporates the following controls.
 - A mode switch for selecting the desired driving mode among three settings--Normal, Sport and Snow
 - Adaptive learning control for the shift time to suppress changes in shift shock over time
 - Real-time feedback control of the hydraulic pressure during shifting so as to suppress variance in shift shock

お使いいただいている代表車種



Rover 75 Tourer

Typical models fitted with the JF506E-R (FPO)



Freelander

FF車用5速AT JF506E-L (FPD)の紹介

Introducing the JF506E-L (FPD) 5-speed AT for Front-drive Cars

JF506E-L型自動変速機は,01年1月にJaguar様のX-Typeに搭載されました.X-TypeはJaguar様初のコンパクト・プレミアムカーで,Jaguar様の伝統的なドライビングを継承するためトラクション4と呼ばれる全輪駆動システムを備えています.JF506E型自動変速機として初のガソリン3.0L車への適用となり,高トルク,高回転での耐久性を確保するため, 各部位の強化を実施し,ラグジュアリーカーにふさわしい変速性能を得るため各種の新制御を導入しています.さらに環境保護,運転性に対する客先ニーズに応える改良を行いました.

The JF506E-L 5-speed AT was adopted on the Jaguar X-Type in January 2001. Representing Jaguar's first compact premium car, the X-Type is fitted with the Traction 4 all-wheel-drive system to continue the Jaguar tradition of driving performance. This was the first application of the JF506E AT to a car powered by a 3.0L gasoline engine. Various parts of the transmission were reinforced to secure sufficient durability for handling high torque and rotational speed levels, and new controls were adopted to provide shift performance befitting a luxury car. Improvements were also made to meet the customer's needs with respect to environmental protection and driveability.

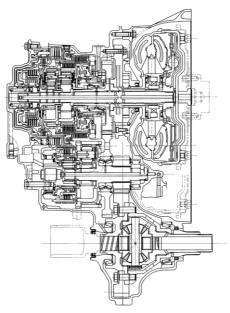


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1	Specif	ications
I abic	ODCCII	ICALIONS

	Model		X-type 2.1L	X-type 2.5L	X-type 3.0L	
	Drive type		Front-wheel drive	All-wheel drive	All-wheel drive	
1	Weight (kg)		1,489	1,620	←	
Vehicle	Engine type		V6 DOHC	←	←	
	Max. power	(DIN)	117 kw (159 ps)/6,750 rpm	145 kw (198 ps)/6,800 rpm	172 kw (234 ps)/6,800 rpm	
	Max. torque	(DIN)	198 Nm/3,750 rpm	244 Nm/4,000 rpm	284 Nm/3,000 rpm	
	Totque converter		236 mm dia.with lock-up	250 mm dia.with lock-up	←	
	Gear ratio	1st	3.802	←	←	
		2nd	2.132	←	←	
		3rd	1.365	←	←	
AT		4th	0.935	←	←	
		5th	0.685	←	←	
		Rev	2.97	←	←	
	FDR		4.153	3.898	←	
1	Center distance (mm		205.9	←	←	
	Dry weight (kg)		95	←	←	

特 徴

- 1. JF506E-R型自動変速機をベースに高トルク,高 回転での耐久性を確保するため,各部位の強化 を行いました.
- (1)フロント遊星ギアのピニオンギアを3個から4個 に,リア遊星ギアのピニオンギアを4個から5個 に増やしました.
- (2)潤滑量を増やすため,オイルポンプノッチ形状を改良してオイル吐出量を増やしました.
- (3)第2軸のスラストベアリングをサイズアップしました.
- 2. X-typeより上級車種であるJaguar XJ Seriesと同等の変速性能の実現と経時,個体ばらつき,環境変化に対する変速性能のロバスト性の確保の要求に以下の開発により対応しました.
- (1)フラットなアップシフトの達成
- (2)新ATFの採用による突き上げショックの改善
- (3)ダウンシフトリアルタイムフィードバック制御 によるダウンシフトの改善
- (4)変速時間学習幅の拡大
- (5)ロックアップショックの改善
- (6)高地での変速性能の改善
- 3. 欧州の排ガス規制EUROIV及びカリフォルニア の排ガス規制LEVIIをクリアするため以下の改 善を行い,環境保護に対応しました.
- (1)ロックアップ車速の低速化
- (2) コーストロックアップ領域の拡大
- (3)高精度エンジントルク信号を使用することによるライン圧の最適化
- 4. Jaguar様の望むしなやかな走りを具現するため 以下の項目を開発し運転性能を向上させました.
- (1)シーケンシャルアップシフト制御
- (2)3マップ アップヒルモード
- (3)シフトマップ最適化 / クーリングモードマップ, トラクションモードマップ, クルーズモードマップ
- 5. その他の改善項目としては, Jaguar様の製造, 診断システムに対応するため,以下の項目を採 用しました.
- (1)チューンセレクト / Jaguarの車両製造ラインで の仕向地データを選択するEOLへの対応
- (2) JDS(Jaguar Diagnosis System)テスターへの対応

Major Features

- The strength of various parts of the JF506E-L AT was further improved over that of the base JF506E-R AT in order to secure ample durability for handling high torque and rotational speed levels.
- (1) The number of pinions in the front planetary gearset was increased from three to four and the number in the rear planetary gearset was increased from four to five.
- (2) To increase the volume of lubricating oil, the discharge volume of the oil pump was increased by improving its notch geometry.
- (3) The thrust bearing of the second shaft was increased in size.
- 2. One of the customer's requests was that the transmission should provide the same level of shift performance as that of the Jaguar XJ Series, a more upscale model than the X-Type. Another request was that shift performance should be robust against changes that occur with the passage of time, variability among individual units and environmental differences. The following development work was undertaken to meet those requirements.

A flat upshift waveform was attained.

- (2) A new automatic transmission fluid was adopted to reduce the end bump at the conclusion of clutch engagement.
- (3) Downshift performance was improved by applying real-time feedback control to downshifts.
- (4) The adaptive learning range for shift time was expanded.

(5) Lockup shock was reduced.

- (6) Shift performance at high altitudes was improved.
- The following improvements were made for enhanced environmental protection in order to comply with the EURO4 exhaust emission standards in Europe and California's LEV-II exhaust emission standards.
- (1) The vehicle speed for lockup operation was lowered.

(2) The coasting lockup range was expanded.

- (3) Line pressure is now optimized by using highly accurate engine torque signals.
- The following items were developed to improve driveability and achieve the supple driving performance desired by Jaguar.
- (1) Sequential upshift control
- (2) 3-map uphill mode
- (3) Optimized shift map, cooling mode map, traction mode map and cruising mode map
- 5. As examples of other improvements that were made, the following items were adopted to provide compatibility with Jaguar's manufacturing and diagnosis systems.
- (1) Support for selectable tuning and end-of-line (EOL) capability to allow data concerning the market where a car will be used to be selected on the Jaguar assembly lines.
- (2) Compatibility with the Jaguar Diagnosis System (JDS) tester.

Typical model fitted with the JF506E-L (FPD) AT

お使いいただいている代表車種



Jaguar X-Type

横置きFFベース4WD用5速AT W5A51(BKO)の紹介

Introducing the Transverse W5A51 (BKO) 5-speed AT for Front-drive-based 4WD Cars

W5A51型自動変速機は、'94年にFF乗用車としては世界初の5速ATとして三菱自動車(株)様のディアマンテに搭載され、今日までに三菱自動車(株)様の高性能車両に搭載され好評を得ています。今回、各部の改良を加え、三菱ランサーエボリューションVI(GT-A)に搭載されました「EVOLUTION」ブランドにふさわしい高機能、ハイレスポンス、高耐久性を実現しました。

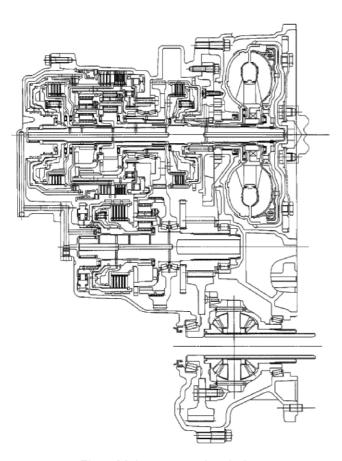


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

The W5A51 AT became the world's first 5-speed AT to be used on a front-wheel-drive car when it was adopted on the Mitsubishi Diamante in 1994. Down to the present, it has continued to be featured on the high-performance cars of Mitsubishi Motors Corporation and enjoys an excellent market reputation. In addition to making further improvements to the W5A51 this time, it has now become the first AT to be used on the Mitsubishi Lancer Evolution VII GT-A. The W5A51 AT provides outstanding functionality, high response and excellent durability befitting the Evolution brand.

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input to	rque	343 Nm		
Max. input sp	eed	6,200 rpm		
Max. vehicle	weight (GVW)	1,755 kg		
Control syster	n	Electronic		
Torque conve	rter	260 mm dia.		
	1st	3.789		
	2nd	2.057		
Gear ratio	3rd	1.421		
Geal Tallo	4th	1.000		
	5th	0.731		
	Rev.	3.865		
Final drive ge	ar ratio	3.333		
No. of selecto	r positions	4+sports mode (+/-)		
Dry weight		107 kg		

特 徴

- (1)1速は,発進加速性を重視し,競合他社よりも ローギヤードに,オーバドライブは高速走行で の航続距離を重視して燃費指向とし,競合他社 よりもハイギヤードな設定としました.
 - (競合他社例レガシーB4 1速総減速比;11.449 オーバードライブ総減速比;2.853)上記以外の 変速段は,上記の間を最適配分しました.
- (2)道路条件と走り方にマッチさせてシフトパターンを制御するINVECS を採用しました.平均的なドライバが最適と感じるシフトタイミングを実現する「最適制御」,個々のドライバの好みを判断し,好みに合ったシフトタイミングに変えていく「学習制御」を採用しました.
- (3)従来の三菱自動車(株)様のスポーツモードに対してステアリングにマニュアルシフト用SWを追加し、スポーツ走行で要求されるシフト操作性をさらに向上しました。従来通り、シフトレバー操作によるマニュアルシフトも可能です。シフトレバーをマニュアルゲート側に移せば、シフトレバーまたはステアリングスイッチを操作するだけで素早いアップシフトとダウンシフトが可能です。変速レスポンスは、Dレンジの自動変速に比べて約1割短縮し、走りを訴求したクイックなレスポンスを実現しました。

お使いいただいている代表車種



Lancer Evolution VII GT-A

Major Features

- (1) Compared with rival transmission models, first gear is geared lower to emphasize start-off acceleration while overdrive is geared higher for better fuel economy with emphasis on the cruising range at high speed. (As an example, compared with the AT used on the Mitsubishi Legacy B4, the total gear reduction ratio of 1st gear is 11.449 and that of overdrive is 2.853.) The other gear ranges are optimally distributed between 1st gear and overdrive.
- (2) The W5A51 incorporates the INVECS-II control system that controls the shift pattern to match the road conditions and driving style. An "Optimum Control" mode provides shift timing that feels just right to the average driver. Adaptive learning control is also utilized to judge the preferences of individual drivers and to vary the shift timing according to their personal tastes.
- (3) Manual shift buttons for the conventional Sports mode of Mitsubishi cars have been added to the steering wheel to deliver the enhanced shifting performance that is demanded in sporty driving. The transmission can also be shifted manually by manipulating the shift lever, just as before. By moving the shift lever to the manual gate side, fast upshifts and downshifts can be executed by simply nudging the lever forward or backward or by pressing the steering wheel buttons. Compared with automatic shifting in the D range, shift response is approximately 10% shorter, providing quick responsiveness that underscores the car's sporty driving performance.

Typical models fitted with the W5A51



AirTrek Turbo-R 4WD

FR車用油圧制御式4速AT JR402H-T(RKB)の紹介

Introducing the JR402H-T (RKB) Hydraulically Controlled 4-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars

JR402H-T型自動変速機は、2002年1月にLondon Taxi Inc.様(以下LTI)のTX (ロンドンタクシー)にFord製ディーゼルエンジンと共に搭載されました.日産自動車(株)様向け車両に搭載している2.5Lクラス用ATをベースとし,新規顧客であるLTI様の短期開発要求に対応したユニットです.

The JR402H-T 4-speed AT was adopted on the TX II London Taxi of London Taxi Inc. (LTI) in January 2002 along with a Ford diesel engine. It is based on an AT used on 2.5L car models of Nissan Motor Co., Ltd. and was modified to meet a request for quick development by LTI, a new customer.

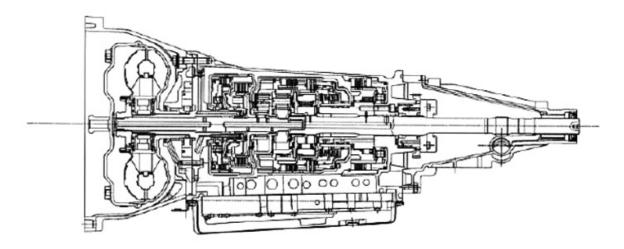


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

		- 1		
lax. input torque				

Max. input to	rque	200 Nm		
Max. input sp	eed	4,400 rpm		
Max. vehicle	weight (GVW)	2,307 kg		
Control syster	n	Hydraulic		
Torque conve	rter	250 mm dia.		
	1st	2.785		
	2nd	1.545		
gear ratio	3rd	1.000		
	4th	0.692		
	Rev.	2.269		
Final drive ge	ar ratio	4.1		
No. of selecto	r positions	6 (P, R, N, D, Ⅱ, I)		
Overall length	1	823.6 mm		
Dry weight		78 kg		

(1)長距離耐久性

長距離保証用ユニットとして実績のあるRKO長 距離仕様(市場50万km保証)を流用した,シ ンプルだが非常に耐久性の優れたユニットです.

(2)油圧式制御

変速及びロックアップを油圧(ガバナ圧)により制御するユニットです.ライン圧はエンジンと連結したスロットルワイヤで決めます.

(3)運転性

各種クラッチやプラネタリーギヤなどのレイアウトやサイズを小型化すると共に,レスポンスを良くしています.トルクコンバータは信頼性の高い実績ある扁平型を採用しており,安定した回転応答性を保っています.また,車体の高剛性と相俟って,油圧ATにしては良好な変速性能を実現しています.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Major Features

(1) Long-mileage durability

The RKO long-mileage specification (market warranty of 500,000 km) with a field-proven record as a unit with long-mileage assurance was adopted for the JR402H-T. Though simple in construction, the JR402H-T provides outstanding durability.

(2) Hydraulic control

Ratio changes and lockup clutch engagement/release are controlled by the governor pressure. The line pressure is determined by a throttle wire connected directly to the engine.

(3) Driveability

The clutches, planetary gearsets and other components have been reduced in size and optimally laid out for improved responsive. A field-proven torque converter with a flat design and high reliability has been adopted to ensure stable speed response. Combined with the car's high body stiffness, the JR402H-T delivers excellent shift performance for a hydraulically controlled AT.

Typical model fitted with the JR402H-T AT



LTI TX II London Taxi

FR車用4速ATJR405E-K(RZB)の紹介

Introducing the JR405E-K (RZB) 4-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars

JR405E-K(RZB)型自動変速機が、いすゞ様のタイ向けピックアップトラック D-MAXに採用されましたので紹介します.D-MAXは日本国内では販売はされておりませんが、タイではシェアNo.1であり、量産開始以来順調に生産を重ねています.

Introduced here is the JR405E-K (RZB) 4-speed AT that has been adopted on the D-Max pickup truck marketed in Thailand by Isuzu Motors Ltd. Although the D-Max is not sold in Japan, it ranks No. 1 in market share in Thailand. The production volume has grown steadily ever since the model went into mass production.

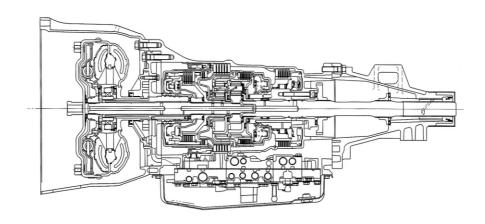


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		294 Nm	
Max. input sp	eed	7,000 rpm	
Max. vehicle	weight (GVW)	3,250 kg	
Control system	n	Electronic	
Torque conve	rter	250 mm dia.	
	1st	2.785	
	2nd	1.545	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000	
	4th	0.694	
	Rev.	2.272	
No. of selector positions		7 (P, R, N, D, 3, 2,1)	
Dry weight		63 kg	

- 1. クラッチ圧直接電子制御(DESC制御)の採用と, エンジン出力特性にマッチした高性能トルクコ ンバータにより,スムーズな変速とパワフルな 発進加速性を実現しています.
- 2. 遠心バランスクラッチ室の採用,2-4ブレーキに 多板式の採用,学習制御の採用により,卓越し たシフトクオリティを安定して実現しました.
- 3. 登降坂制御の採用により登坂時の頻繁な変速を 防止し,降坂路で最適なエンジンブレーキを自 動的に実現しています.
- 4.2速,3速,4速での多段ロックアップを採用することにより,燃費性能を向上させるとともに, 走行時のダイレクト感を実現しています.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Major Features

- The adoption of a direct electronic shift control (DESC) system for the clutch pressures and a highperformance torque converter that matches the engine output characteristics enables the RZB to shift smoothly and deliver powerful start-off acceleration performance.
- 2. Stable outstanding shift quality has been achieved by adopting centrifugal balance clutch chambers, multiplate brakes for the 2nd-4th gears and adaptive learning control.
- The use of hill-climbing shift control prevents frequent shifting on uphill grades and automatically provides optimum engine braking on downhill grades.
- 4. Multi-gear lockup operation has been adopted for the 2nd, 3rd and 4th gears for improved fuel economy and more direct feedback to the driver while driving.

Typical model fitted with the JR405E-K (RZB)



D-Max

FR車用4速ATJR402E-M(RJD)の紹介

Introducing the JR402E-M (RJD) 4-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars

JR402E-M(RJD)型自動変速機は,累計500万台以上の生産実績と,全世界中での使用実績に裏付けられた高い信頼性と安定した品質を持つFR4速のJR402Eシリーズの最新機種です.

2003年5月にフォード様のアジアパシフィック地域向けピックアップトラック:レンジャーのモデルチェンジが実施され,2.5Lディーゼルターボエンジン4x4車にAT仕様が追加設定されるのに伴い採用されました.

The JR402E-M (RJD) is the latest addition to the JR402E series of 4-speed ATs for rear-wheel-drive cars. Cumulative production of over five million units and a track record of worldwide use attest to the outstanding reliability and stable high quality of the JR402E series.

In May 2003, Ford Motor Co. executed a full model change of its Ranger pickup truck that is marketed in the Asia-Pacific region. The R402E-M (RJD) was adopted at that time because an AT specification was added to the 4x4 model fitted with a 2.5L diesel turbo engine.

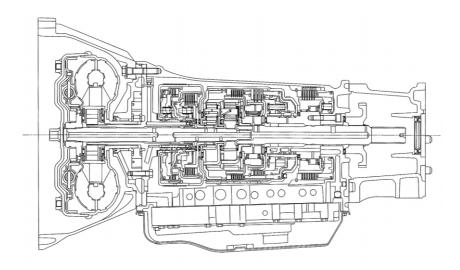


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Tabl	ا ما	1	Speci	fi	cat	ions
ıav	10		ONCO		uai	เบเเอ

Max. input torque		262 Nm	
Max. input sp	eed	5,000 rpm	
Max. vehicle	weight (GVW)	2,632 kg	
Control syster	n	Electronic	
Torque conve	rter	250 mm dia.	
	1st	3.027	
	2nd	1.619	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000	
	4th	0.694	
	Rev.	2.272	
No. of selector positions		6 (P, R, N, D, S, L)	
Dry weight		73 kg	

- 1. 4速ATとしては超ワイドな変速ギヤレシオと, エンジン出力特性にマッチした高性能トルクコ ンバータにより,パワフルな発進加速性を実現 しています.
- 2. 高速・高負荷での使用環境においても良好な耐 久性を発揮するよう,フロント遊星ギヤセット の表面処理を改良しています.
- 3. 次のような油圧制御を採用しています.
 - (1)変速時間学習制御

変速所要時間が最適な値になるよう,変速中のクラッチ作動油圧を調整して,変速ショックの経時変化を抑えています.

(2)ライン圧制御

走行状態に応じて,ライン圧を各クラッチ 作動に必要な圧力で,かつオイルポンプの 損失が少ない圧力に調圧し,燃費向上を図っています. **Major Features**

- The RJD delivers powerful start-off acceleration performance, thanks to its ultra-wide gear ratio range for a 4-speed AT and high-performance torque converter that matches the engine output characteristics.
- The surface treatment applied to the front planetary gearset was improved to enable the RJD to display excellent durability even when used under highspeed, high-load conditions.
- 3. The following pressure controls were adopted.
 - (1) Adaptive learning control during shifting Clutch operating pressures are adjusted during shifting to obtain the optimum time needed for shifting, which works to inhibit degradation of shift shock with continued use.
 - (2) Line pressure control

To improve fuel economy, the line pressure is modulated to the pressure needed for the operation of each clutch and also to the level that minimizes oil pump losses, according to the driving conditions.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the JR402E-M (RJD)



Ford Ranger

FR車用 5速ATJR507E(RXO)の紹介

Introducing the JR507E (RXO) 5-speed AT for Rear-drive Cars

JR507E型自動変速機は,701年1月に日産自動車(株)様のシーマに初めて採用され,702年8月にフェアレディZに拡大採用されました.

The JR507E 5-speed AT was initially adopted on the Nissan Cima in January 2001, and its application was further expanded to the new Fairlady Z in August 2002.

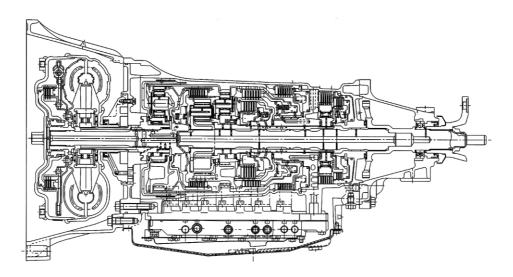


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		450 Nm	
Max. input sp	eed	7,000 rpm	
Max. vehicle	weight (GVW)	3,190 kg	
Control syster	n	Electronic	
Torque conve	rter	250 mm dia.	
	1st	3.540	
	2nd	2.264	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.471	
Geal Tatio	4th	1.000	
	5th	0.834	
	Rev.	2.370	
Final drive gear ratio		3.357	
No. of selector positions		4 (P, R, N, D)+Manual Mode	
Dry weight		74 kg	

- (1)新スケルトンの採用,トルクコンバータの小型 化,アルミ材の採用により,クラストップレベ ルの小型化・軽量化を実現しています.
- (2)ワイドな5速ギアの採用により、高い燃費性能とパワフルな加速性能を両立しています.
- (3)新型の多板ロックアップ機構を採用し,広い範囲でのスリップロックアップを可能にしています.
- (4)クラッチ油圧直接電子制御システム,リアルタイムフィードバック制御システムを採用し,世界最高の変速性能を実現しており,フェアレディZではスポーツカーらしいレスポンスの良いセッティングにしています.
- (5)エルグランド,フェアレディZ用 JR507Eより, 機電一体システム(ATCUをAT本体内に搭載) を採用しています.この結果
 - 1)小スペースでのATCU含めた電装品のモジュール化を実現しました.
 - 2) JR507E搭載車では、従来のATCU取り付け スペースがいらなく、ATとATCUを結線し ていた電装ハーネスも不要となり、車両の レイアウト自由度が増え、車両の原価低減 にも寄与しています.
- (6)フェアレディZ用JR507Eより,マニュアルモード(ギア固定式)を採用し,マニュアルミッションと同じように,ドライバーの意志にあったドライビングを,可能にしています. また,車両のシフトレバーもストレートタイプ(P-R-N-D)+マニュアルモード(+/-)のスポーツタイプとなっています.

お使いいただいている代表車種



Fairlady Z

Major Features

- (1) The JR507E 5-speed AT is one of the smallest and lightest units in its class, thanks to the adoption of a new transmission schematic, downsizing of the torque converter and extensive use of aluminum.
- (2) The adoption of a wide 5-speed ratio range achieves excellent fuel economy combined with powerful acceleration.
- (3) The use of a new multi-plate lockup clutch allows slip lockup control over a wide speed range.
- (4) The world's highest level of shift performance has been attained by adopting an electronic system for direct control of the clutch pressures and a real-time feedback control system. On the Fairlady Z, the transmission is tuned to provide quick response befitting a sports car.
- (5) Beginning with the Nissan Elgrand and Fairlady Z, the JR507E has adopted an integrated electromechanical system with the AT control unit (ATCU) incorporated in the transmission. This has resulted in:
 - Creation of a compact electrical harness and component module, including the ATCU, in a small space.
 - 2) Increased freedom for the vehicle layout and contribution to vehicle cost reductions because the space previously needed for installing the ATCU is no longer necessary on JR507E-equipped cars, nor is the wiring harness that was formerly used to connect the AT and ATCU.
- (6) Beginning with the JR507E used on the Fairlady Z, a manual shift mode with fixed gear ratios has been adopted to enable drivers to enjoy driving performance matching their wishes in the same manner as with a manual transmission. In addition, a sporty shift lever has also been adopted with a straight gear position layout (P-R-N-D) combined with a manual shift mode (+/- gate).

Typical model fitted with the JR507E (RXO)



Fairlady Z interior

FF車用ベルトCVT F1C1(BAO)の紹介

Introducing the Steel-belt F1C1 CVT (BAO) for Front-drive Cars

F1C1型CVTは,'00年に三菱自動車(株)様初のCVTとしてランサーセディアに搭載され,その高いシフトクオリティと低燃費で好評を得ています.今回,各部の改良によりさらなる燃費の向上,軽量化を達成し,コルトにも拡大採用されました.

The F1C1 CVT was adopted on the Mitsubishi Lancer Cedia in 2000 as the first CVT ever to be used on a Mitsubishi car. It has been highly acclaimed for its outstanding shift quality and low fuel consumption. Further improvements have now been made to attain better fuel economy and a lighter weight, and application of this unit has been expanded to the Mitsubishi Colt as well.

Tab	le 1	Speci	f	icat	ior	าร
-----	------	-------	---	------	-----	----

Engine		For 1.3L Engine		For 1.5I	For 1.5L Engine	
2WD/4WD		2WD	4WD	2WD	4WD	
Max. inp	out torque	125 Nm	←	150Nm	←	
Max. inp	out speed	6,000 rpm	←	←	←	
Max. vehic	ele weight (GVW)	1,375 kg	←	←	←	
Control :	system	Electronic	←	←	←	
Torque o	onverter	236 mm dia.	←	←	←	
Ratio	Paris FWD	2.319~0.445	←	←	←	
	REV	2.588	←	←	←	
Ratio co	verage	5.211	←	←	←	
Final gear ratio		5.219	5.686	5.219	5.686	
No. of select position		6 (P,R,N,D,Ds,L)	←	←	←	
Dry weight		76.8 kg	77.8 kg	77.8 kg	78.8 kg	

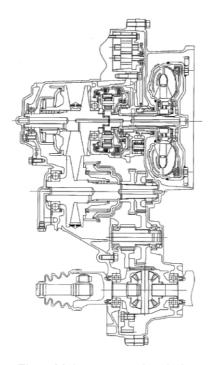


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

1. 高効率

- (1)スプールバルブにアルミ製バルブの採用, および各部の精度向上で油圧回路からの漏 れ量を低減しオイルポンプの小型化を達成. これによりオイルポンプの駆動ロスを大幅 に低減しました.
- (2)エンジンとの統合制御をさらに改良し,エンジンの燃料消費を最小とするような変速制御を追加しました。
- (3) ロックアップ制御を改良し,レスポンスの 短縮とショックの低減を両立させました.

2. 軽量化

主にプーリ関係部品を1.3L, 1.5L専用化し形状を最適化することで軽量化を達成しています.

3. ギヤ比設定

ランサーセディア1.5L車用に対してファイナル ギヤ比を変更し,ドライバビリティと低燃費を 両立させました.

Major Features

- 1. High efficiency
- (1) Leakage from the hydraulic pressure circuit was reduced by adopting an aluminum spool valve and improving component accuracy, allowing the oil pump to be downsized. As a result, oil pump drive losses have been substantially reduced.
- (2) A shift control has been added to improve integrated control with the engine and thereby minimize engine fuel consumption.
- (3) Lockup control has been further improved to achieve quicker response combined with reduced shift shock.

2. Weight reductions

Weight reductions were achieved by making pulleyrelated components in particular specific to the 1.3L and 1.5L models, enabling the part geometries to be optimized.

3. Gear ratios

The final gear ratio was changed to match the 1.5L Lancer Cedia for improved driveability combined with lower fuel consumption.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical models fitted with the W5A51



COLT

縦置き4WD車、FF車用4速AT(RAM)の紹介

Introducing the Longitudinal 4-speed AT (RAM) for 4WD Cars and Front-drive Cars

富士重工業(株)様のフォレスターには,1997年から当社のパワートレイン部品及びコントロールバルブ部品を採用していただいています.その後インプレッサ,レガシィワゴン,B4にも順次拡大採用いただいています.

Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. has been using JATCO powertrain components and control valve parts on its Subaru Forster since 1997. Subsequently, application was also steadily extended to the Impressa, Legacy Wagon and B4.

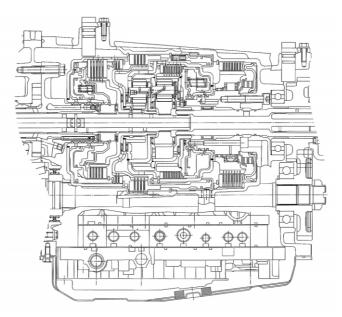


Fig. 1 Main cross-sectional view

Table 1 Specifications

Max. input torque		319 Nm	
Max. input speed		7,000 rpm	
Max. vehicle weight (GVW)		1,570 kg	
Control sy	stem	Electronic	
	1st	2.785	
	2nd	1.545	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.000	
	$4 ext{th}$	0.694	
	Rev.	2.272	
No. of selector positions		7 (P, R, N, D, 3, 2, 1)	

- (1)オーバーランニングクラッチ,3-4ワンウェイク ラッチを廃止しコンパクトな構造としています.
- (2)バンドブレーキを廃止し,多板ブレーキの採用に加え,タービン回転をダイレクトに検出することにより,変速制御機能の向上を図っています.
- (3)スリップロックアップ制御の採用により,燃費の向上と振動伝達の軽減を図っています.
- (4)クイックな変速レスポンスとスポーティな走り が楽しめる,マニアルシフト"Sports SHIFT"を 採用しています.

Major Features

- (1) A compact construction was achieved by discontinuing the overrun clutch and the one-way clutch for 3-4 upshifts.
- (2) Shift control capability was improved by adopting multi-plate brakes in place of the previous band brakes and by detecting the turbine speed directly.
- (3) Slip lockup control was adopted to improve fuel economy and reduce the transmission of vibration.
- (4) The manual "Sports Shift" mode was adopted to let drivers enjoy quick shifting response and sporty driving performance.

お使いいただいている代表車種

Typical model fitted with the RAM AT



FORESTER

富士AT株式会社の紹介

Introducing Fuji AT Ltd

柳澤 孝*

Takashi YANAGISAWA

1. 概要

社 名 富士AT株式会社

所在地 群馬県邑楽郡大泉町いずみ一丁目1番地1号 (富士重工業株式会社群馬製作所大泉工場内)

創 立 2003年1月23日

資本金 4.5億円

従業員 11名

この度,ジヤトコ(株)と富士重工業(株)とが共同出資(出資比率:富士重工業50%,ジヤトコ50%)して,軽自動車およびサブコンパクトカー(1.0~1.3リッタークラス)用新型CVTの開発と生産を目的とした富士AT(株)を設立しました.

2. 設立の狙い

富士重工業は,1987年に金属ベルトCVTの実用化に成功,進化・改良を重ねて累計185万台以上の生産実績を持ち,更なるCVTのコンポーネントビジネスとしての可能性を広げたいとの意向を持っています。また,ジヤトコは,CVT事業を強化し,世界で唯一の軽自動車から大排気量高級車までのフルライン体制の構築を目指しています。今回,両社の相互メリットを活かすことを目的として,富士AT(株)が設立されました。

富士ATは新型CVTの開発を富士重工業およびジャトコに委託するとともに,開発された新型CVTを富士重工の大泉工場(群馬県邑楽郡大泉町)の生産設備を活用して生産し,ジヤトコを通じて富士重工業をはじめ自動車メーカ各社に販売する計画です。

現在,富士ATでは,ジヤトコ本社内の富士事業所に7名,富士重工業東京事業所内の東京分室に4名,計11名の従業員が両社の設計・実験の開発陣と協同で開発作業を進めており,2005年度より月産1万台レベルを目標として立ち上がり,2006年度の安定時点で200名規模の工場として,月産1万7千台を目標とした生産・供給を開始する計画です.

1. Profile of Fuji AT Ltd

Location: 1-1-1, Izumi, Oizumi-machi, Oura-gun, Gunma Prefecture (at the Oizumi Plant of

FHI's Gunma Main Plant)

Established: January 23, 2003 Capital: 450 million yen Workforce: 11 employees

JATCO Ltd and Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. (FHI) both provided half of the start-up capital to establish Fuji AT Ltd in January 2003 for the purpose of developing and manufacturing new continuously variable transmissions (CVTs) for use on minicars and subcompact cars (1.0-1.3L class).

2. Purposes of Establishment

Ever since it successfully implemented a steel-belt CVT on a production vehicle in 1987, FHI has repeatedly improved and refined its CVTs and now boasts a cumulative production volume of more than 1.85 million units. It intends to expand the possibilities of the CVT component business further. JATCO has also been strengthening its CVT business with the aim of building the world's only full lineup of CVTs, capable of covering applications from minicars to luxury cars fitted with a large displacement engine. Fuji AT was established with the objective of making the most of these mutual advantages to both companies.

Fuji AT contracts the development of new CVTs to FHI and JATCO. Additionally, it plans to manufacture the newly developed CVTs using the production facilities at FHI's Oizumi Plant, located in Oizumi-machi, Oura-gun, Gunma Prefecture. These CVTs will be sold through JATCO to FHI and other automakers.

Fuji AT's eleven employees are currently engaged in development activities in cooperation with the design and testing staffs of both companies' development organizations. Seven of them are working at JATCO's Fuji Manufacturing Department and the other four are working at the Tokyo Engineering Liaison Office of FHI's Tokyo Office. Fuji AT plans to launch manufacturing and supply activities in FY 2005 with a monthly production volume of 10,000 units. At the point when operations become stable in FY 2006, it aims to have a plant workforce of 200 employees who will be producing 17,000 units a month.

^{*} 富士AT株式会社 取締役 Fuji AT Ltd Director

3. 環境

富士AT本社のある群馬県邑楽郡大泉町は,群馬県の南東部に位置し,隣接する太田市にある富士重工業群馬製作所と共に,自動車工業他を中心とする工業の町です.その基盤を築いたのは,中島知久平が創始した「中島航空機」です.戦後中島航空機が解体された後も技術は引継がれ,現在の工業都市として発展しつつあり,また日本で最も外国人の多い町(平成12年度は人口の13.4%が外国人)としても知られ,お祭の時にはサンバのパレードも見ることができます.

また,この地方は日本史の中で足利尊氏や楠木 正成と共に中世を代表する武将である新田義貞公 が生れ育った所と言われています.新田一族ゆか りの地として,「太平記の里」と呼ばれており,数 多くの新田氏に関する史跡が散在しています.

大泉工場の最寄駅である太田駅には,新田義貞公の銅像もあり(Fig. 1),近くの金山には新田氏の一族が築城した金山城の城跡があります。今でも石垣が残っており,城の本丸跡に建てられた新田義貞を奉る新田神社等,付近一帯は国の指定遺跡となっています。

大學的學

Fig. 1 Statue of Yoshisada Nitta

3. Surrounding Environment

The head office of Fuji AT is located in the town of Oizumi in the Oura district in the southern part of Gunma Prefecture. Oizumi is an industrial town, which, together with the neighboring city of Oota where FHI's Gunma Main Plant is located, is at the heart of the area's automotive industry. Its industrial foundations were established by Nakajima Aircraft Co., Ltd., founded by Chikuhei Nakajima. Those technologies were passed on even after Nakajima Aircraft was broken up after World War II and have contributed to the town's ongoing growth as an industrial center. Oizumi is also known for having the largest number of foreign residents of any town in Japan, with foreigners accounting for 13.4% of its total population as of 2000. Samba parades can be seen as one part of local festivals.

This region is also said to be the birthplace of Yoshisada Nitta, one of the leading military commanders in Japan's middle ages, along with Takauji Ashikaga and Masanari Kusunoki. Because of its association with the Nitta clan, it is called the "home of the Taiheiki" ("A Chronicle of Great Peace"). Many historical sites related to Yoshisada Nitta are located here and there.

Oota Station, the closest train station to the Oizumi Plant, has a statue of Yoshisada Nitta (Fig. 1). Also located nearby is Mt. Kanayama, where one can see the ruins of Kanayama Castle that was built by the Nitta clan. The stone walls still remain today, and Nitta Shrine, dedicated to Yoshisada Nitta, stands on the former site of the castle keep. The entire surrounding area has been designated as a national historic site.



Fig. 2 Daikouin Temple

金山の麓には,徳川家康が先祖である新田義貞を弔うために建立した寺である大光院があり「子育て呑竜」と呼ばれ,近隣の人々に親しまれています.現在でも多くの参拝者が訪れています.(Fig. 2)富士重工業のAT工場としてスタートした大泉工場は昨年20周年を迎え,開設時工場の廻りに植えた木々は大木となり,工場の周りを流れる休白川に面した桜の並木は,今年も見事に咲き,道を行く人々の目を楽しませています.

将来,富士ATはここでCVTを生産する予定ですが,周辺の自然環境と調和した人にやさしい工場として今後も生産活動を推進していきたいと考えます(Fig. 3, 4)



Fig. 3 Row of beautiful cherry trees near the plant entrance

4. 富士ATの今後

CVTは、高性能な走りと低燃費を高次元で両立させる新世代のトランスミッションとして注目されており、特に環境にやさしいトランスミッションとして自動車各社での採用が今後期待されています。まずは現在開発中の新型CVTを、将来性に優れたCVTとして、目標とする品質、原価を達成し、計画日程通りに出現させることが当面の最重要課題であります。

Located at the foot of Mt. Kanayama is Daikouin Temple (Fig. 2), built by leyasu Tokugawa to mourn the spirit of his ancestor, Yoshisada Nitta. It is a favorite place of the local residents and is referred to by the name of its founding priest, Donryu, known for his efforts to raise abandoned children. Many worshipers still visit the temple even today.

The Oizumi Plant, which got started as FHI's AT plant, observed the 20th anniversary of its establishment last year. The trees that were planted at the time it was built have now grown tall. The row of cheery trees along the Kyuuhaku River that flows near the plant blossomed magnificently again this year, providing an enjoyable sight for peopling traveling on the road (Fig. 3).

In the future, Fuji AT plans to produce CVTs at the plant. The plant intends to proceed with production activities in harmony with the surrounding natural environment and friendly to the local residents (Fig. 4).



Fig. 4 Overall view of Oizumi Plant

4. Future of Fuii AT

CVTs have attracted attention as next-generation transmissions that optimally combine high driving performance with low fuel consumption. They are expected to be increasingly adopted by automakers in the coming years as transmissions that are particularly friendly to the environment. The chief priority for Fuji AT at present is to achieve the levels of quality and cost targeted for the new CVTs now under development and to bring them to market on schedule as CVTs with an outstanding future potential.

Author



Takashi YANAGISAWA

JATCO京都地区(旧ダイヤモンドマチック)の紹介

Introducing JATCO's Kyoto Operations (Formerly Diamondmatic Co., Ltd.)

辻本 和正^{*} Kazumasa TSUJIMOTO

1. 概要

2003年4月に,新たにJATCOと統合した,旧ダイヤモンドマチックの京都地区を紹介する.

所在地:京都市右京区太秦荒木町1番地 従業員数:735人(職制・プロパー・派遣社員合計

2002年12月1日現在)

ダイヤモンドマチックは,2002年4月に三菱自動車工業(株)から,トランスミッション関連部門が分社して設立された新会社である.この2003年4月にJATCO社と合併し,名実ともに,JATCO社の一員となった.

京都地区には,生産本部京都事業所,開発本部京都開発センター及び管理部門の一部があり, JATCO社の西日本の一大拠点となっている.

京都地区では,主要製品である,FF車用4・5速電子制御,FR車用4・5速電子制御オートマチックトランスミッション(AT)の板金加工,機械加工からユニット組立,検査までを行い,主として三菱自動車工業(株)にタイムリーかつ高品質な製品を供給している.

1. Overview

This article describes the Kyoto operations, formerly Diamondmatic Co., Ltd. (DMC), which were newly merged with JATCO in April 2003.

Address: 1 Araki-cho, Uzumasa, Ukyo-ku, Kyoto Workforce: 735 employees (combined total of managerial, regular and seconded personnel as of December 1, 2002)

DMC was newly formed in April 2002 when Mitsubishi Motors Corporation (MMC) spun off its transmission business as a new subsidiary. In April 2003, DMC merged with JATCO and became a full-fledged member of the JATCO family.

The Kyoto operations constitute JATCO's major operating base in Western Japan and consist of the Production Divisions' Kyoto Manufacturing Department, R & D Operation Management Center' Kyoto Engineering Center and one part of the Administration Department.

The work done here includes stamping, machining, assembly and inspection of electronically controlled 4-and 5-speed automatic transmissions (ATs) for both front-wheel-drive and rear-wheel-drive cars. These high-quality transmissions are the major products produced in Kyoto and are mainly supplied to MMC in a timely manner.



Fig. 1 Assembly line of ATs for front-wheel-drive cars at the Kyoto Plant

^{*}生産本部 Production Division

2. 歴史

京都地区でのトランスミッション生産の歴史は古く,三菱重工業(株)京都機器製作所時代の1954年に名車ジープ用3速マニュアルトランスミッション(MT)の立ち上げからMTの開発・生産をしてきた.1970年三菱自動車工業(株)京都製作所となって以降,1975年には,乗用車用としては,初めて3速ATを開発・生産.その後1979年にFF車用3速AT.1983年にFF車用4速ATの開発・生産を経て,現在の主要製品であるFF車用4・5速電子制御AT(FA4)は,1994年に産声を上げた(Fig.1)

更に,1996年には,FF車用部品と共有化を図り, 安価で高品質な乗用車用FR4・5速AT(RA5)を立ち 上げ,パジェロ等に搭載されている.

2002年12月には,AT生産累計360万台を達成.現在の京都地区のAT生産は,月産6万台を超えるレベルまで成長し,更なる品質の向上と,より生産性の高いラインを目指し,生産活動に取り組んでいる.

3. 環境

歴史文化都市京都は,清水寺など数多くの世界 文化遺産を有し,近年では,1997年12月に開催さ れた地球温暖化防止京都会議(COP3)をはじめ,環 境問題に積極的に取り組んでいる.

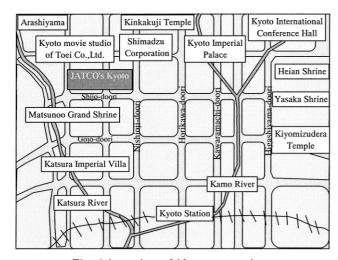


Fig. 2 Location of Kyoto operations

2. History

The manufacture of transmissions has a long history in this part of Kyoto, dating back to 1954 when the Kyoto Machine Plant of Mitsubishi Heavy Industries launched production of 3-speed manual transmissions (MTs) for the renowned Jeep. Development and production of MTs have been carried out here since then. In 1970, the factory became MMC's Kyoto Plant. Threespeed ATs for passenger cars were first developed and manufactured here in 1975. Subsequently, 3-speed ATs for front-wheel-drive cars were developed and produced beginning in 1979, followed by the development and manufacture of 4-speed ATs for front-wheel-drive cars starting in 1983. Then, in 1994, production was launched for electronically controlled 4- and 5-speed ATs (FA4) for front-wheel-drive cars. These units are among the principal products produced here today (Fig. 1).

Moreover, production of electronically controlled 4and 5-speed ATs (RA5) for rear-wheel-drive passenger cars was launched in 1996, in a move to share parts with units for front-wheel-drive cars. These low-cost, highquality transmissions are used on the Mitsubishi Pajero, among other models.

Cumulative AT production reached 3.6 million units in December 2002. The AT production volume in Kyoto has now grown to a level that exceeds 60,000 units per month. Vigorous activities are under way to enhance quality further and to achieve production lines with even higher levels of productivity.

3. Surroundings

Rich in history and culture, Kyoto is home to many World Heritages, including Kiyomizudera Temple. In recent years, active efforts have been made to address environmental issues, such as by hosting the Third Conference to the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (COP3) in December 1997.



Fig. 3 Front gate of Koryuji Temple

その中にあって,京都地区は,京都市内の中心を東西にはしる四条通りの西の端に位置し,北には弥勒菩薩で有名な広隆寺,南に桂離宮,西には酒造の神 松尾大社と,古都京都にあっても,歴史的に有名な建造物に囲まれた場所に位置している. (Fig. 2,3)

近くには,東映京都撮影所があり,時には街頭での撮影に出くわし,日頃,スクリーンの中でしか見られない役者を生で見られるチャンスの多い地域である.

また,近くを流れる桂川の上流には,渡月橋で有名な嵐山があり,特に桜,もみじのシーズンには,全世界から観光客が押し寄せ,国際都市京都をあらためて実感する瞬間である.

この環境の中に所在する京都地区は,周辺の住宅地域との共生を目指し,工場敷地内の緑化に努め,通路にはグリーンベルトを敷き詰めるなど,自然環境との調和・共存と人にやさしい工場での開発・生産活動を推進している.

4. 京都地区の今後

京都地区生産のFF及びFR車用ATは,現在でも, 三菱車の主要車種に搭載され,世界中に供給され ているが,今後,北米市場の拡大や中国市場への 参入で,大幅な生産量増産が予定されている.

技術陣は,開発部門と協力しながら,高品質な製品を高効率に生産できるラインづくりに取り組んでいる.

The Kyoto operations are located at the western end of Shijo-doori, a large avenue that runs through the center of Kyoto from east to west. To the north is Koryuji Temple, famous for its wooden statue of Miroku Bosatsu; to the south is the Katsura Imperial Villa; and to the west is Matsunoo Grand Shrine, known for the god of sake brewing. The Kyoto operations are thus located in an area surrounded by many historically famous structures in the old capital city of Kyoto (Figs. 2 and 3).

Also located nearby is the Kyoto movie studio of Toei Co., Ltd. Occasionally, one comes across a movie crew filming on the street. In this area, there are frequent chances to watch live performances of actors and actresses one usually can only see on the screen.

Another famous spot is Arashiyama hill near Togetsukyo bridge, located upstream on the Katsura River that flows nearby. This spot is thronged with tourists from throughout the world especially during the seasons for viewing cherry blossoms and red maple leaves. At those times, one can truly feel all over again the international atmosphere of Kyoto.

Located in this environment, the Kyoto operations strive to live in harmony with the surrounding residential area. For example, green belts have been planted along the roadways on the premises in an effort to provide as much greenery as possible. Development and production activities are carried out in harmony with the natural environment and in a manner friendly to the local residents.

4. Future of Kyoto operations

The ATs produced at the Kyoto operations for frontand rear-wheel-drive cars are still being used on Mitsubishi's mainstay models and are supplied throughout the world. It is expected that production volumes will increase in the future as a result of expanded use in the North American market and entry into the Chinese market.

The production engineering staff members are working together with the Development Group to build production lines for manufacturing high-quality products with high efficiency.

Author



Kazumasa TSUJIMOTO

ジヤトコ・コリア(JKE)の紹介

Introducing JATCO Korea Engineering Corporation

田代 綾夫* AYAO Tashiro

1. 概要

社 名 JATCO Korea Engineering Corp.

所在地 韓国ソウル市永登浦区汝矣島洞23-7

裕和証券ビル8階

創 立 1998年5月11日

資本金 3億ウォン(約3千万円)

従業員 143名(職制・出向者含む '03年1月現在)

当社は日本から一番近い国,韓国の首都ソウルに立地するジヤトコ(株)以下「本社」という)の韓国現地法人である.本社の第二開発拠点として設立されたJKEは,富士・厚木・新横浜地区における開発機能を補完すべく部品・ソフトウェアの請負開発業務,長期的には派生ユニット請負開発業務までを分担するグローバル開発センターを目指している.

2. 設立のねらい

韓国の自動車生産は世界第5位であり;90年代初には20%台であったAT装着率も毎年急速に増加し,現在では日本,アメリカに次ぐ水準までになるとともに,確固たるAT市場が形成されている.

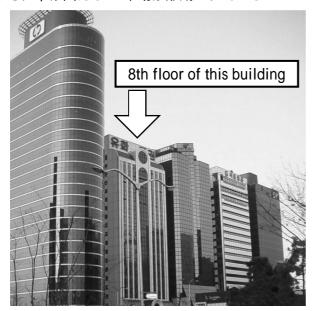


Fig. 1 JATCO Korea Engineering Office

*JATCO Korea Engineering Corp

1. Profile of JATCO Korea Engineering Corp.

Location: 8th FI, Yuhwa Building, 23-7 Youido-dong, Yongdungpo-gu, Seoul, South Korea

Establishment: May 11, 1998

Capitalization: 300 million won (approx. 30 million yen) Workforce: 143 employees (including managerial and seconded personnel, as of January 2003)

JATCO Korea Engineering Corp. (JKE) is JATCO's South Korean subsidiary, located in Seoul, the capital of South Korea, which is Japan's closest neighboring country. Established as JATCO's second engineering base, JKE complements the engineering functions located in the Fuji, Atsugi and Shin-Yokohama areas by undertaking contract development of parts and software. In the long term, it aims to become a global engineering center that shares the contract development work for derivative transmission units.

2. Purposes of Establishment

South Korea is the world's fifth largest producer of vehicles. The percentage of vehicles equipped an automatic transmission (AT) in South Korea has been increasing rapidly every year since the early 1990s when it stood at 20-some percent. It has now reached a level where it ranks after Japan and the U.S., supporting the formation of a solid AT market.



Fig. 2 The Night View of Seoul from JKE Office

また, '90年代末まで内製化を志向してきた韓国自動車メーカは, 内外環境の変化によって, ユニット部品を専門メーカから調達する方向に政策転換するようになってきた.

加えて韓国は,アジアの中で日本以外の唯一AT国産化が可能な国となったため,AT技術者の人数も増加してきている.

このような背景の下,本社でも韓国の有能な人材を最大限に活用して韓国ビジネスを有利に進めるため,新開発拠点の設置が緊急課題になり,1998年JKEを設立することになった.

JKEでは,第一に,本社グローバル開発体制の中にあって,ユニット設計,実験,油圧及び電子制御部門等の各部門の業務支援と共に3Dデータ,解析,箱物,操作系,ATCU開発の請負業務を遂行している.

第二に,ルノー・三星,現代・起亜,GM・大宇 等の韓国客先向けの開発業務を迅速かつ効率的に 支援するために,搭載設計業務のほか,現地生産 車の実験及び品質保証等の業務を担当している.

その他,本社商品企画のための韓国自動車メーカ・自動車部品メーカの動向調査や情報収集,また本社生産技術部門の支援業務なども遂行している.

3. 環 境

当社事務所のあるヨイド(汝矣島)は,ソウルを 横切る漢江に取り囲まれた100万坪程の小さな中洲 で,ソウルの中心に位置している.ヨイドは韓国 のウォール街とも呼ばれ,証券取引所を中心に証 券会社や銀行の本店及び大企業の本社が沢山あり, 名実共に韓国における金融のメッカとなっている.

事務所は,その街並みにある20階建ての証券会社ビルの8階全部を借用している(Fig. 1, 2)占有部分の床面積は約990㎡であり,その内ほぼ2/3が研究所で,残りは応接室,会議室,電子実験室などで構成されている.会議室には,富士・厚木地区等との三元TV会議設備が設置されているほか,本社との設計データ送受信が可能な設備や本社の情報を直接閲覧できるインフラが構築されている.(Fig. 3)



Fig. 3 Working Areas at JKE

Until the end of the 1990s, South Korean automakers preferred to manufacture major components in-house. Due to changes in the internal and external environment, they have changed their policy to one of procuring major parts from specialized manufacturers.

In addition, because South Korea has become the only country in Asia, except Japan, that is capable of manufacturing ATs domestically, the number of AT engineers has also been increasing.

Against this backdrop, the establishment of a new engineering base in South Korea became an urgent issue for JATCO in order to advance our business favorably in that market by making maximum use of that country's talented human resources. Accordingly, JATCO set up JKE in 1998.

JKE's first purpose is to support the activities of each internal JATCO group, including the transmission design, testing and hydraulic and electronic control groups, within the framework of the company's global engineering organization. It also undertakes contract work for 3-D data analysis and the development of transmission cases, housings, operating systems and AT control units (ATCUs).

Its second purpose is to provide quick and efficient support for the development of products for South Korean customers, including Renault Samsung, Hyundai/Kia Motors, GM Daewoo and others. Toward that end, JKE is responsible for activities such as testing locally produced vehicles and providing quality assurance, in addition to mountability design work.

Besides these activities, it gathers information and surveys trends among South Korean automakers and parts manufacturers for use in product planning work at JATCO. Additionally, it also provides support for JATCO's Production Engineering Group.

3. Surrounding Environment

JKE's office is located in the center of Seoul on Youido, a small island of around 3.306 million m² in size situated in the Han River that runs through the capital. Called the Wall Street of South Korea, Youido is home to the Korea Stock Exchange and the head offices of many securities companies, banks and large corporations. It is South Korea's center of banking and finance in both name and reality.

As its office, JKE leases the entire eighth floor of a 20-story securities company building in that financial district (Figs. 1 and 2). The office occupies a floor area of approximately 990 m², of which about two-thirds is devoted to the laboratory and the remaining space mainly consists of a reception room, a conference room and an electronic testing room. The conference room is equipped with a 3-D teleconferencing system that is linked to the Fuji and Atsugi engineering centers, among other places. There are also facilities for exchanging design data with JATCO and a system for directly viewing information from JATCO (Fig. 3).

当社が事務所をヨイドに構えたのは,ヨイドが 交通至便な韓国有数のビジネス街で,ソウル志向 の強い韓国人技術者が特に憧れる勤務地の一つで あるためであり,リクルート活動への大きな効果 を期待している.また,自動車メーカ各社の本社 及び研究所はソウル近郊に在り,業務連携に便利 な場所である.

さて,事務所西方には,韓国で一番大きなヨイド公園(Fig. 4)があり,ランチタイムには,コーヒー専門店等で寛いだり,三々五々集まってヨイド公園を散策したりして過ごしている.また,東方には,韓国内で一番高層の63ビルがあり,中には水族館やスクリーン高が6階ほどにもなる大型アイマックス映画館がある.高速エレベ-タを利用すれば,わずか1分20秒で60階の展望台まで垂直に上昇する興奮と,高さによって違う姿を見せるソウルのスカイラインを楽しむことができる.



Fig. 4 The Youido Park

更に,夕方になると多様な韓国食事の楽しさを満喫できる.有名ホテルやデパートが集まっているソウル市庁舎周辺,ソウル市内の有数な繁華街である明洞(ミョンドン)・鐘路(チョンノ),格安の値段でショッピングが可能な南大門(ナンデムン)などは,すべて事務所から30分圏内に位置している.

4. JKEの今後

当社では、創立以来約5年間は、有能なエンジニアの確保や設備、組職等のインフラ整備に邁進し、所期の規模に拡大することができた、今後は、設立目的や役割を早期に果たすために、本社と遜色ないか凌駕するグローバル開発要員を輩出するよう、人材教育、社風醸成、各種システム整備に取組んでいくつもりである。

ひいては,技術力で世界をリードする本社の海外 現地法人として,名実ともにグローバル開発体制の 一翼を担っていきたいと考えている.

最後に,本社の各部門の協助と協力に感謝させていただき,皆様に心から御礼を申しあげます.今後とも宜しくご支援のほどお願いいたします.

JKE located its office on Youido with the expectation that it would be very effective in recruiting employees. As one of South Korea's leading business districts with convenient transportation connections, Youido is one of the desired places to work, especially for South Korean engineers who strongly prefer to be in Seoul. It is also a convenient location for collaborative activities with automakers that have their headquarters and laboratories in the suburbs of Seoul.

Situated to the west of the office is Youido Park, the largest park in South Korea (Fig. 4). Employees spend their lunchtime relaxing in nearby coffee shops or strolling through Youido Park in small groups. To the east is located a 63-story skyscraper, South Korea's tallest building. Inside is an aquarium and a mammoth IMAX movie theater with a screen that is nearly six stories high. If visitors take the express elevators, they can enjoy the excitement of being whisked straight up to the 60th-floor observation deck in just 80 seconds, as well as the pleasure of seeing the Seoul skyline, which shows a different profile depending on the height from which it is viewed.

Moreover, one can fully enjoy the pleasures of various types of Korean cuisine in the evening, and there are many other places within a 30-minute radius of the office. These include the area around the City Hall where famous hotels and department stores are concentrated, Seoul's foremost entertainment/shopping districts of Myong-dong and Chongno, and the Namdaemun market for incredibly inexpensive shopping.

4. Future of JKE

In approximately the five years since it was established, JKE has grown to its initially expected scale by working hard to securing competent engineers and putting in place its infrastructure, including the necessary facilities and organization. In order to discharge the purposes of its establishment and fulfill its role as quickly as possible, JKE intends to focus its efforts on human resources development, cultivation of a corporate culture and implementation of various systems so that it can develop global engineering personnel as well as or even better than JATCO.

Eventually, JKE aims to shoulder one part of JATCO's global development system both in name and reality as one overseas subsidiary of JATCO that is at the world's forefront in terms of technological and engineering capabilities.

Finally, the author would like to thank all of JATCO's internal groups for their assistance and cooperation and ask for their continued support in the years ahead.

Author



Ayao TASHIRO

特 許 紹 介

Patents

1. ロックアップクラッチの制御装置

(Fig. 1 & Fig. 2)

出願: 1992.1.28 特願平4 - 37130 登録: 2000.6.9 特許第3076439号

名称:ロックアップクラッチの制御装置

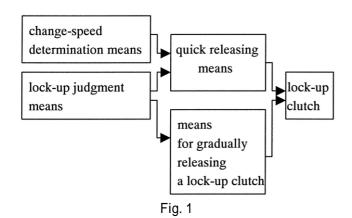
発明者:飯塚尚典

【目的】

ロックアップクラッチの解放と同時に変速が行われる場合に,ロックアップクラッチの解放が遅れて,変速ショックが大きくなることを防止することを目的とする.

【発明の構成】

流体伝動装置のポンプインペラ側とタービンランナ側とを連結可能なロックアップクラッチを締結状態から解放状態に切り換える際に締結力を徐々に低下させる解放緩和手段を有するロックアップクラッチの制御装置において、運転条件に応じてロックアップクラッチの応じて変速すべきかどうかを判断する変速判断手段がロックアップ判断手段がロックアップ判断手段がロックアップクラッチの解放を判断すると同時に変速判断手段が変速を判断した場合には解放緩和手段による締結力の低下速度を上記以外の場合よりも大きくする変速時急速解放手段とを有する構成とした.



1. Control system for lock-up torque converter for automatic transmissions

(Fig. 1 & Fig. 2)

Application Number: 4-37130 Application Date: 28.1.1992 Patent Number: 3076439 Registration Date: 9.6.2000

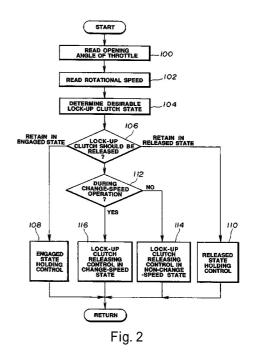
Title: Control system for lock-up clutch

Inventor: Naonori Iizuka

[Summary of the invention]

It is an object of the present invention to provide a control system for a lock-up clutch employed in a lock-up torque converter for automatic transmissions, which can optimally control a decreasing speed of engaging force of the lock-up clutch, depending on the existence of change-speed operation.

It is the other object of the invention to provide a control system for a lock-up clutch employed in an automotive lock-up torque converter, which can optimally reduce so-called "select-shock" or other undesirable shocks, such as shock occurring during releasing operation of the lock-up clutch.



【作用・効果】

本発明によると,ロックアップクラッチ解放時の締結力の低下速度を,同時に変速が行われる場合には,これ以外の場合よりも大きくなるようにしたので,ロックアップクラッチの解放と同時に変速が行われる場合には,ロックアップクラッチを急速に解放させて変速ショックを小さくすることができ,またロックアップクラッチが単独で解放される場合には,緩やかに解放させてロックアップクラッチ解放に伴うショックを小さくすることができる.

2. 工作機械の故障予知装置

(Fig.3)

出願:出願日 1991.3.6 特願平3 - 40296

登録:登録日 2000.8.18 特許登録第3100406号

名称:工作機械の故障予知装置

発明者:望月康政,吉野智昭,長谷川信一

【目的】

工作機械の一連の作業工程中における所定の作業工程時を監視データの監視時期として特定することにより,工作機械の異常を早期に検出して,その故障を予知することができる工作機械の故障予知装置を提供することを目的とする.

In order to accomplish the aforementioned objects, a control system for a lock-up clutch employed in a lockup torque converter for an automatic transmission for an automotive vehicle, comprises a lock-up clutch releasing means for gradually releasing the lock-up clutch in a manner so as to gradually reduce an engaging force of the lock-up clutch in a transient state in which the lockup clutch is shifted from a lock-up clutch engaged state to a lock-up clutch released state, a change-speed determination means for judging whether a change-speed operation of the vehicle should be performed depending on the running condition of the vehicle, and for generating a change-speed instruction when the changespeed determination means determines that the changespeed should be performed, a lock-up judgment means for judging whether the lock-up clutch should be conditioned in the clutch engaged state or in the clutch released state, depending on the vehicle running condition, and a quick releasing means responsive to the change-speed instruction generated at the same time when the lock-up judgment means determines the release of the lock-up clutch, for reducing the engaging force of the lock-up clutch at a higher speed than during nonchange-speed operation. It is preferable that the quick releasing means reduces the engaging force of the lockup clutch at a higher speed than during up-shift, when the down-shift operation is performed simultaneously with the lock-up clutch releasing operation.

2. System and method for predicting failure in machine tool

(Fig. 3)

Application Number: 3-40296 Application Date: 3.6.1991 Patent Number: 3100406 Registration Date: 18.8.2000

Title: System and method for predicting failure in

machine tool

Inventors: Yasumasa Mochizuki, Tomoaki Yoshino,

Shinichi Hasegawa

[Summary of the invention]

It is an object of the present invention to provide a system and method for predicting or estimating an occurrence of failure in a machine tool which are capable of specifying a predetermined working process from among a series of working processes of the machine tool as a monitoring period of time for monitor data so as to detect, at an earlier time, an abnormality in the machine tool and to predict its occurrence of failure.

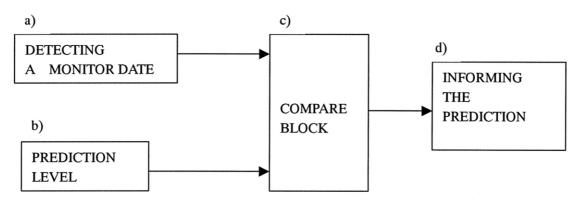


Fig. 3

【発明の構成】

図においてa)は,工作機械の動作状況に応じて変化するサーボモータ負荷電流などの監視データを検出するための検出手段,b)は,その監視データに対応する故障予知レベルを設定するための設定手段である.c)は比較判定手段であり,検出手段a)からの監視データの値と設定手段b)からの故障予知レベルとを比較して,前者が後者を越えたときに故障予知信号を出力するものであり,工作機械の一連の作業工程中における所定の作業工程期間を比較判定期間として指定する.d)は報知手段であり,前記故障予知信号に基づいて,故障が予知されたことを表示画面などを用いて報知するものである.

【作用・効果】

工作機械の故障予知装置は,工作機械の監視データの監視期間として,モータの定速の空送り動作期間中の期間を特定することにより,その特定期間中に動作状況に最適な故障予知レベルの設定を可能とし,その最適な故障予知レベルと監視データとの比較から故障を早期に予知する.また,モータの定速の空送り動作期間中は,工作機械の加工条件の如何に拘わらず,モータに掛かる負荷がほぼ一定となるため,種々の加工動作を行う場合にも故障予知レベルを共通化して,その故障予知レベルの設定作業の簡素化を可能とする.

The above-described object can be achieved by providing a system for predicting an occurrence of failure in a machine tool, comprising: a) first means for detecting a monitor data which is changed according to an operating situation in a series of working processes of the machine tool; b) second means for setting a prediction level of failure against the monitor data, the prediction level being set according to the operating situation; c) third means for comparing the monitor data detected by the first means with the prediction level set by the second means during a predetermined one of the series of working process of the machine tool and outputting a failure prediction signal when the value of the monitor data exceeds the prediction level; and d) fourth means for informing the prediction of the occurrence of failure on the basis of the received failure prediction signal.

社外技術発表一覧 (2002年1月1日~2002年12月31日)

·—		, , , , , ,	/
発 表 日	発 表 先	表 題	発 表 者
2002.1.15~17	13th International Colloquim Tribology Lubricants, Materials and Lubrication Engineering (Ostfildern, Germany)	Development of New Fluids Supporting the Design of Advanced Automatic Transmissions and Innovative CVTs	第一機能部品開発部
2002.3.3	SAE (Detroit, USA)	Development of Large Capacity 5-Speed Automatic Transmission (JR507E) for RWD Vehicles	JATCO USA, Inc 加藤 達也 第二性能設計部 道岡 浩辺 日産自動車(株) 御子柴美男 日産自動車(株) 村上賢一品
2002.5.13~14	Getriebe-elektronik (Mannheim, Germany)	Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission	先行開発部 藤川 雅/
2002.5.23	日本材料学会第51期学術講演会(高松)	歯車の浸炭焼き入れシミュレーション及び変形・残留応力の実 験検証	埼玉工業大学 向井 竜 埼玉工業大学 町田 一原 埼玉工業大学 巨東英 第二構造部品設計部 陳 勇
2002.6.4	(社)自動車技術会中部支部 研究発表会(名古屋)	マニュアル8段変速付きトロイダ ルCVTの開発	第一商品開発本部 吉田 武 第一性能設計部 河村 泰老
2002.6.22~26	3rd International Forum on Advanced Material Science and Technology (Ansan, China)	Computer Simulation of Metallic Thermail-Mechanical Behavior in Carburizing-Quenching of Gear	埼玉工業大学 巨東英 埼玉工業大学 町田 一点 埼玉工業大学 向井 竜二 第二構造部品設計部 陳 勇
2002.7.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会(横浜)	AT制御ソフトウェア検証用HIL シミュレータの開発と応用	第一機能部品開発部 佐藤 雅名第一機能部品開発部 勝 生元第一機能部品開発部 藤塚 亮宝第一機能部品開発部 守田 晚餐第二機能部品開発部 市川 修二 機能部品開発部 中岩 宏和先行開発部 松村 利力
2002.7.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 春季大会(横浜)	JASO M315「自動変速機油」の 改訂	第一機能部品開発部 村上 靖元 (株)本田技術研究所 加藤 維統 トヨタ自動車(株) 斎藤 浩二 三菱自動車工業(株) 伊藤 由紀 マツダ(株) 若崎 章元 富士重工業(株) 野城 陽元 東燃ゼネラル石油(株) 金子 博記 出光興産(株) 渡部 暢野
2002.7.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会春季大会(横浜)	微粒子ピーニングによるベルトCVT トルク容量向上技術の開発	第一機能部品開発部 池田 第5 第一機能部品開発部 吉田 誠 第一実験部 武河 史良 第一構造部品設計部 黒田 正二郎 ユニット技術部 加地 敦 日産自動車(株) 浅野 俊芸
2003.7.23~25	(社)自動車技術会 インターナショナルワークショップ(横浜)	Application of a Toroidal CVT to a Sporty Car	第一性能設計部 河村 泰曼

発 表 日	発 表 先	表 題	発 表	者
2002.9	自動車技術会誌 '02/9月号	マニュアルモード8段付きト ロイダルCVTの紹介	第一性能設計部 日産自動車(株)	河村 泰孝 菊池 暁
2002.9	自動車技術会誌 '02/9月号	新型5速オートマチックトランスミッションの開発	日産自動車(株) 日産自動車(株) 第二性能設計部 第二商品開発本部	御子柴美典 村上賢一郎 道岡 浩文 水島 輝久
2002.9.24~26	Global Powertrain Congress (Detroit, USA)	Development of an Integrated Hybrid Automatic Transmission	先行開発部 先行開発部 先行開発部 先行開発部	藤川 雅人 吹野 真人 中島 健治 望月 政治
2002.9.25	(社)日本機械学会 2002年 年次大会 (東京)	浸炭歯車の面圧強度に及ぼす 自動変速機油油種の影響	第二構造部品開発部	陳 勇
2002.10.23	ASIATRIB 2002	Technical Trends of Automatic Transmissions with Vehicles and New Developments on Tribology Technology	第一機能部品開発部	村上 靖宏
2002.11.26~28	(社)自動車技術会 学術講演会 秋季大会 (京都)	大容量小型トルクコンバータ の開発	第一機能部品開発部 第一機能部品開発部 第一機能部品開発部 第一機能部品開発部	岡田 克彦 牧野 哲也 石川 昌範 山本 毅
2002.12.3~4	1st International IIR-Symposium Innovative Automotive Transmission (Offenbach, Germany)	Introducing the New 150-Nm CVT	第一実験部 日産自動車(株)	山下 裕 小林 淳文
2002.12.10	(社)自動車技術会 シンポジウム『動力伝達系の最新技 術2002』(東京)	微粒子ピーニングによるベルトCVTトルク容量向上技術の開発	第一機能部品開発部 第一機能部品開発部 第一実験部 第一構造部品設計部 ユニット技術部 日産自動車(株)	池田 篤史吉田 誠 史
2002.12.19~21	計測自動制御学会(SICE) 講演会(神戸)	MATLABを用いた5速AT変速 性能解析	先行開発部 第一機能部品開発部	松村 利夫 勝 生水

編集後記

2003年4月にダイヤモンドマチック(株)とジヤトコが合併し、新生ジヤトコとして新たにスタートし ました。合併を記念して、第4号ではダイヤモンドマチック(株)の技術を特集し、両者の技術の強みを 紹介することができました。

ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビューも今回で4回目の発行となりました。創刊号は日本語版のみでした が、第2号以降は英語版も発行し、前回の第3号からは日本語・英語併記という、1冊で国内外の皆様に お読みいただける論文集となりました。掲載する技術も進化していますが、ジヤトコ・テクニカル・ レビューも特集を工夫したり、より読みやすい文章・構成にするなど、たくさんの方にお読みいただ けるレビューになるよう、進化させていきたいと考えております。

最後に執筆者の方々には非常に限られた時間の中で原稿を作成していただき、ありがとうございま した。この場を借りて御礼申し上げます。

> - ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー事務局 佐藤真琴 -

編集委員会(Editorial Committee)

委員長(Chairman)

池田孝 取締役 専務

Koichi Ikeda Executive Vice President & Member of the Board

員(Members)

金 丸 裕 情報システム部

Yuuji Kanamaru Management Information Systems Department

品質管理部

開発管理部

勲

Isao Kono Quality Administration Department

坂 本 重信

第二営業部 Shigenobu Sakamoto Sales & Marketing Department No. 2

永 原 博

Hiroshi Nagahara R&D Administration Department

竹 内

第一商品開発本部 Tohru Takeuchi Product Development Center No.1

浦 美 利 第一商品開発本部

Mitoshi Miura Product Development Center No. 1

里 和 第一機能部品開発部 Kazuo Umesato Functional Component Development Department No. 1 山嘉

Yoshiaki Yokoyama

山 Noboru Yokoyama

今 村 博

Hiroshi Imamura

樫村

Tsutomu Kashimura

加藤芳章

Yoshiaki Kato

先行開発部

Advance Development Department

事務局(Secretariats)

前田

Eiki Maeda

佐 藤

Makoto Sato

山 元 浩 子 Hiroko Yamamoto

開発管理部

第一実験部

Experiment Department No. 1

第二実験部

Experiment Department No. 2

ユニット技術部

Unit Production Engineering Department

生産管理部

Production Control Department

R&D Administration Department

開発管理部

R&D Administration Department

開発管理部

R&D Administration Department

ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー No.4

C禁無断転載

行 2003年6月 発

発行・編集人 ジヤトコ・テクニカル・レビュー

編集委員会

ジヤトコ株式会社 発 行 所

開発管理部

静岡県富士市今泉700-1 〒417-8585 0545(52)2661

EП 刷 所 スルガ印刷

静岡県富士市今泉3丁目6-20

JATCO Technical Review No.4

June, 2003

JATCO Technical Review Publisher

琴

(Editor) **Editorial Committee**

Distributor R & D Administration Department

JATCO Ltd

700-1, Imaizumi, Fuji City Shizuoka, 417-8585, Japan

Copyrights of all articles described in this Review have been preserved by JATCO Ltd. For permission to reproduce articles in quantity or for use in other print material, contact the chairman of the editorial committee.